

Technical Construction File

File No: MD-TCF-230728-49218
Applicant:

Resaeng co., ltd

Address of applicant:

401,22, Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea



Directive: 2006/42/EC Machinery Directive

Legal Person:	
-	

Product: Mega Reencle

Model: RSV2B / RSV2B-1 / RSV2B-2 / RSV2B-3 RSV2C / RSV2C-1 / RSV2C-2 / RSV2C-3 RSV2D / RSV2D-1 / RSV2D-2 / RSV2D-3 / RSV2D-R HMV2D / HMV2D-1 / HMV2D-2 / HMV2D-3



Table of contents

Part I: General	3
1.1 List of applicable regulations and standards	3
1.2 Variations of the series products	4
1.3 Quality control system	5
Part II: Assessment of conformity	7
2.1 Essential health and safety requirements	7
3.1 EN ISO 12100 Report	31st
3.2 Airborne noise Report	159
3.3 EN 60204-1 Report	161
3.4 EN 60204-1:2018 Report	223
Annex: Technical Information	227
Annex 1: Safety pictures of the machine	228



Part I: General

1.1 List of applicable regulations and standards

In order to ensure the conformity for CE marking for these machines, some main European and/or International standards have been used to make assessment of conformity, they are:

EN ISO 12100:2010 Safety of machinery - General principles for design - Risk assessment and risk reduction

EN 60204-1:2018 Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines

EN 12852:2001+A1:2010 Food processing machinery - Food processors and blenders - Safety and hygiene requirements

EN 1672-1:2014 Food processing machinery - Basic concepts - Part 1: Safety requirements EN 1672-2:2020 Food processing machinery - Basic concepts - Part 2: Hygiene and cleanability requirements

The test reports for these applicable standards in detail have been included in the relevant sub-clauses of this technical construction file.



1.2 Variations of the series products

RSV2B / RSV2B-1 / RSV2B-2 / RSV2B-3 RSV2C / RSV2C-1 / RSV2C-2 / RSV2C-3 RSV2D / RSV2D-1 / RSV2D-2 / RSV2D-3 / RSV2D-R HMV2D / HMV2D-1 / HMV2D-2 / HMV2D-3



1.3 Quality control system

In order to ensure the conformity of the series production, the Resaeng co., ltdhas taken the related procedures mentioned below:

(1) Apply for the consultant from the qualified body in Germany

The Resaeng co., ltd has applied for the consultant from Shanghai Global Testing Services Co.,Ltd who is a competent institute for the CE marking consultant and certification in China. The complete technical construction file(TCF)have been established before applying for the CE marking certificate under the consultant of GTS.

(2) Carry out the inspection for parts and components according to the TCF

Before the assemblies of the series production, the QC engineers of Resaeng co., ltd has to check and inspect the technical specifications and intended functions of parts and components to ensure the correct use of them according to the contents of TCF and principle described in the related technical information.

(3) Carry out the inspection & testing for the products before packing

Before packing the products, the QC engineers of Resaeng co., ltd have to do the necessary inspection and testing to ensure the conformity of related requirements, in particularly, the testing and inspection of electrical characteristics and outer feature.

(4) Carry out the inspection for the packing

After finishing the necessary inspection and testing for the products, an inspection for the packing has to be done to ensure the necessary elements being included in this packing before shipment.

(5) Provision for the change of design

Any change of the products described in this TCF must be checked in detail and written down again in the TCF by the designer of Resaeng co., ltd, if the change may effects the related electrical or mechanical characteristics.

(6) Provision for the Quality Assurance

For the provisions of internal control measures to ensure the conformity of series production of the machines, Resaeng co., ltd has built an internal quality control system in accordance with the international standard of ISO-9001.



TECHNICAL FILE

Essential health and safety requirements

The third Party	Shanghai Global Testing Serv Floor 2nd, Building D-1, No. Road, Minhang District, Shan	128, Shenfu			
Name and address of the applicant	Resaeng co., ltd 401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, B	Busan, Republic of Korea			
Name and address of the manufacturer	Resaeng co., ltd 401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea				
Name and address of the factory (production sites)	Resaeng co., ltd 401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea				
Product	Mega Reencle				
Mode/type reference	RSV2B / RSV2B-1 / RSV2B-2 / RSV2B-3 RSV2C / RSV2C-1 / RSV2C-2 / RSV2C-3 RSV2D / RSV2D-1 / RSV2D-2 / RSV2D-3 / RSV2D-R HMV2D / HMV2D-1 / HMV2D-2 / HMV2D-3				
Reviewed according to	Essential health and safety requirements				
Review Result	PASS				
TCF No.	MD-TCF-230728-49218				
W 1 1 1	Tony Guo	Signature Signature			
Work carried out by					
Word verified by	Kevin Shi	GTS)			
word verified by	Manager	Signature			
Date of issue	July 31,2023	CERTIFICATION			



Part II: Assessment of conformity

2.1 Essential health and safety requirements

ESSENTIAL REQUIREMENTS ACCORDING TO ANNEX I

MACHINERY SAFETY DIRECTIVE 2006/42/EC

Article	Sub-article	Requirement	Fullfilment			Remark
			Υ	N	N/A	
1	1.1.2	Principles of safety integration (a) Machinery must be so constructed that it is fitted for its function, and can be adjusted and maintained without putting persons at risk when these operations are carried out under the conditions foreseen by the manufacturer. The aim of measures taken must be to eliminate any risk of accident throughout the foreseeable lifetime of the machinery, including the phases of assembly and dismantling, even where risks of accident arise from foreseeable abnormal situations. (b) In selecting the most appropriate methods, the manufacturer must apply the following principles, in the order given: - eliminate or reduce risks as far as possible (inherently safe machinery design and construction),				Pass. All the machines are fitted for the function. Enough protection is provided
		- take the necessary protection measures in relation to risks that cannot be eliminated,				risks Pass. Safety guards and other devices are used.
		- inform users of the residual risks due to any shortcomings of the protection measures adopted, indicate whether any particular training is required and				Pass. Enough warnings are provided in the



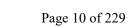
GTS

	specify any need to provide personal protection equipment.		appropriate spot
	(c) When designing and constructing machinery, and when drafting the instructions, the manufacturer must envisage not only the normal use of the machinery but also uses which could reasonably be expected. The machinery must be designed to prevent abnormal use if such use would engender a risk. In other cases the instructions must draw the user's attention to ways - which experience has shown might occur - in which the machinery should not be used.		Pass. All the conditions are considered by the manufacturer, and the related information also has been provided within the instruction
	(d) Under the intended conditions of use, the discomfort, fatigue and psychological stress faced by the operator must be reduced to the minimum possible taking ergonomic principles into account.		Pass. These requirements have been complied with, and the related information also has been provided within the instruction manual. Pass.
	(e) When designing and constructing machinery, the manufacturer must take account of the constraints to which the operator is subject as a result of the necessary or foreseeable use of personal protection equipment (such as footwear, gloves, etc.).		These requirements have been taken into account during the design of this machine
	(f) Machinery must be supplied with all the essential special equipment and accessories to enable it to be adjusted, maintained and used without risk.		
1.1.3	Materials and products The materials used to construct machinery or products used and created during its use must not endanger exposed persons' safety or health. In particular, where fluids are used, machinery must be designed and constructed for use without risks due to filling, use, recovery or draining.	Image: section of the	Pass. They cannot endanger exposed person's safety or health
1.1.4	Lighting The manufacturer must supply integral lighting suitable for the operations concerned where its lack is likely to cause a risk despite ambient lighting of normal intensity.	\square	Not applicable. No integral lighting has been used.
	The manufacturer must ensure that there is no area of shadow likely to cause nuisance, that there is no irritating dazzle and that there are no dangerous stroboscopic effects due to the lighting provided by the manufacturer.		Not applicable. No integral lighting has been used.

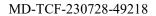


Page 9 of 229

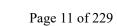
	Internal parts requiring frequent inspection and adjustment and maintenance areas must be provided with appropriate lighting			Not applicable. No integral lighting has been used.
1.1.5			$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$	
	Machinery or each component part thereof must:			-
	- be capable of being handled safely,			Pass. Enough measures have been taken to ensure the safe of the handling.
	- be packaged or designed so that it can be stored safely and without damage (e.g. adequate stability, special supports, etc.).			Pass. The machine can be stored in wood box safely and without damage.
	Where the weight, size or shape of machinery or its various component parts prevents them from being moved by hand, the machinery or each component part must;			Not applicable
	- either be fitted with attachments for lifting gear, or			Not applicable
	- be designed so that it can be fitted with such attachments (e.g. threaded holes), or			Not applicable
	- be shaped in such a way that standard lifting gear can easily be attached. Where machinery or one of its component parts is to be moved by hand, it must:			Not applicable
	- either be easily movable, or			Not applicable
	- be equipped for picking up (e.g. hand-grips, etc.) and moving in complete safety.			Not applicable
	Special arrangements must be made for the handling of tools and/or machinery parts, even if lightweight, which could be dangerous (shape, material, etc.).			Not applicable
1.2	Controls	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$		
1.2.1	Safety and reliability of control systems			
	Control systems must be designed and constructed so that they are safe and reliable, in a way that will prevent a dangerous situation arising.			Pass. The control system for this machine is safe and reliable by appropriate



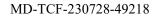
GTS



			designing
	Above all they must be designed and constructed in such a way that:		-
	- they can withstand the rigours of normal use and external factors,		Pass. The control system can withstand related effects during normal operation. Pass.
	- errors in logic do not lead to dangerous situations.		Any error in logic doesn't lead to dangerous situations.
1.2.2	Control devices	\square	_
	Control devices must be:		
	- clearly visible and identifiable and appropriately marked where necessary,		Pass. Appropriate lables and markings are provided This requirement has been complied with
	- positioned for safe operation without hesitation or loss of time, and without ambiguity,		Pass. Appropriate positions have been taken into account during design. Pass.
	- designed so that the movement of the control is consistent with its effect,		Movement of the control is consistent with its effect
	- located outside the danger zones, except for certain controls where necessary, such as emergency stop, console for training of robots,		Pass. All control devices have been located outside the danger zones.
	- positioned so that their operation cannot cause additional risk,		Pass. All operation of control devices 'tcause additional risk.
	- designed or protected so that the desired effect, where a risk is involved, cannot occur without an intentional operation,		Pass. ppropriate safety devices have been used to comply with this requirement.
	- made so as to withstand foreseeable strain; particular attention must be paid to emergency stop devices liable to be subjected to considerable strain.		Pass. All of them can withstand foreseeable strain.



GTS



	Where a control is designed and constructed to perform several different actions, namely where there is no one-to-one correspondence (e.g. keyboards, etc.), the action to be performed must be clearly displayed and subject to confirmation where	Not applicable.
	necessary. Controls must be so arranged that their layout, travel and resistance to operation are compatible with the action to be performed, taking account of ergonomic principles.	Pass. These requirements have been taken
	Constraints due to the necessary or foreseeable use of personal protection equipment (such as footwear, gloves, etc.) must be taken into account.	into account during design. Not applicable.
	Machinery must be fitted with indicators (dials, signals, etc.) as required for safe operation. The operator must be able to read them from the control position From the main control position the operator must be able to ensure that there	Pass. The indicators have been provided.
	are no exposed persons in the danger zones. If this is impossible, the control system must be designed and constructed so that an acoustic and/ or visual warning signal is given whenever the	Pass. Emergency stop, main switch and
	machinery is about to start. The exposed person must have the time and the means to take rapid action to prevent the machinery starting up.	other related devices have been provided for the exposed person.
1.2.3	Starting It must be possible to start machinery only by voluntary actuation of a control provided for the purpose. The same requirement applies:	Pass. Devices preventing unintended strating have been provided.
	 - when restarting the machinery after a stop-page, whatever the cause, - when effecting a significant change in the operating conditions (e.g. speed, pressure, etc.), 	Pass. Reset is necessary before restaring. Pass. These requirements have been
	unless such restarting or change in operating conditions is without risk to exposed persons.	complied with.
	This essential requirement does not apply to the restarting of the machinery or to the change in operating conditions resulting from the normal sequence of an automatic cycle.	Not applicable.
	Where machinery has several starting controls and the operators can therefore put each other in danger, additional devices (e.g. enabling devices or selectors allowing only one part of the starting mechanism to be actuated at any one time) must be fitted	



Page 12 of 229

	to rule out such risks.		
	It must be possible for automated plant functioning in automatic mode to be restarted easily after a stoppage once the safety conditions have been fulfilled.		Not applicable.
1.2.4	Stopping device	\square	
	Normal stopping		
	Each machine must be fitted with a control whereby the machine can be brought safely to a complete stop.		Pass. A normal stop control has been provided.
	Each workstation must be fitted with a control to stop some or all of the moving parts of the machinery, depending on the type of hazard, so that the machinery is rendered safe. The machinery's stop control must have priority over the start controls		Pass. It has priority over the start control.
	Once the machinery or its dangerous parts have stopped, the energy supply to the actuators concerned must be cut off		Pass. The stops belong to the category 0, or category 1 stops.
	Emergency stop Each machine must be fitted with one or more emergency stop devices to enable actual or impending danger to be averted.	\square	Pass. These machines are fitted with one emergency stop devices.
	The following exceptions apply:		_
	- machines in which an emergency stop device would not lessen the risk, either because it would not reduce the stopping time or because it would not enable the special measures required to deal with the risk to be taken,		Not applicable.
	- hand-held portable machines and hand-guided machines.		Not applicable.
	This device must:		
	- have clearly identifiable, clearly visible and quickly accessible controls,		Pass. The emergency sop has red button, yellow background and maked with "emergency stop"



Page 13 of 229

	- stop the dangerous process as quickly as possible, without creating additional hazards, - where necessary, trigger or permit the triggering of certain safeguard movements.	Pass. The emergency stop will stop the machine as soon as it is pressed and it will not create any additional hazards. Not applicable.
	Once active operation of the emergency stop control has ceased following a stop command, that command must be sustained by engagement of the emergency stop device until that engagement is specifically overridden; it must not be possible to engage the device without triggering a stop command; it must be possible to disengage the device only by an appropriate operation, and disengaging the device must not restart the machinery but only permit restarting.	
	Complex installations In the case of machinery or parts of machinery designed to work together, the manufacturer must so design and construct the machinery that the stop controls, including the emergency stop, can stop not only the machinery itself but also all equipment upstream and/or downstream if its continued operation can be dangerous.	— Not applicable.
1.2.5	Mode selection The control mode selected must override all other control systems with the exception of the emergency stop. If machinery has been designed and built to allow for its use in several control or operating modes presenting different safety levels (e.g. to allow for adjustment, maintenance, inspection, etc.), it must be fitted with a mode selector which can be locked in each position. Each position of the selector must correspond to a single operating or control mode. The selector may be replaced by another selection method which restricts the use of certain functions of the machinery to certain categories of operator (e.g. access codes for certain numerically controlled functions, etc.).	Pass. The emergency stop is effective regardless of operating modes. Not applicable. No this kind of mode selectionhas been found. Not applicable. No this kind of mode selection has been found Not applicable. No this kind of mode selection has been found Not applicable. No this kind of mode selection has been found.



Page 14 of 229

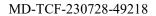
	If, for certain operations, the machinery must be able to operate with its protection devices neutralised, the mode selector must simultaneously: - disable the automatic control mode,		Not applicable. No this kind of mode selection has been found. Not applicable.
	- permit movements only by controls requiring sustained action,		Not applicable.
	- permit the operation of dangerous moving parts only in enhanced safety conditions (e.g. reduced speed, reduced power, step-by-step, or other adequate provision) while preventing hazards from linked sequences,		Not applicable.
	- prevent any movement liable to pose a danger by acting voluntarily or involuntarily on the machine's internal sensors.		Not applicable.
	In addition, the operator must be able to control operation of the parts he is working on at the adjustment point.		Not applicable. No this kind of mode selectionhas been found.
1.2.6	Failure of the power supply	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$	_
	The interruption, re-establishment after an interruption or fluctuation in whatever manner of the power supply to the machinery must not lead to a dangerous situation.		Pass. No any dangerous situation has been found.
	In particular:		_
	- the machinery must not start unexpectedly,		Pass. The stop command has the
	- the machinery must not be prevented from stopping if the command has already been given,		priorityover all other devices Pass. No such part is found.
	- no moving part of the machinery or piece held by the machinery must fall or be ejected,		
	- automatic or manual stopping of the moving parts whatever they may be must be unimpeded,		
	- the protection devices must remain fully effective.		



Page 15 of 229

1.2.7	Failure of the control circuit	V	
	A fault in the control circuit logic, or failure of or damage to the control circuit must not lead to dangerous situations.n particular: - the machinery must not start unexpectedly,		
	 the machinery must not be prevented from stopping if the command has already been given, no moving part of the machinery or piece held by the machinery must fall or be ejected, 		
	- automatic or manual stopping of the moving parts whatever they may be must be unimpeded,		
	- the protection devices must remain fully effective.		
1.2.8	Software Interactive software between the operator and the command or control system of a machine must be user-friendly.		
1.3	Protection against mechanical hazards	V	-
1.3.1	Stability		-
	Machinery, components and fittings thereof must be so designed and constructed that they are stable enough, under the foreseen operating conditions (if necessary taking climatic conditions into account) for use without risk of overturning, falling or unexpected movement.		Pass. These requirements have been taken into account design
	If the shape of the machinery itself or its intended installation does not offer sufficient stability, appropriate means of anchorage must be incorporated and indicated in the instructions.		Not applicable. The sufficient stability has been offered for this machine.
1.3.2	Risk of break-up during operation	7	
	The various parts of machinery and their linkages must be able to withstand the stresses to which they are subject when used as foreseen by the manufacturer. phenomena of fatigue, ageing, corrosion and abrasion.		Pass. All parts of the machine can withstand related stress when they are used.





	The durability of the materials used must be adequate for the nature of the work place foreseen by the manufacturer, in particular as regards the The manufacturer must indicate in the instructions the type and frequency of inspection and maintenance required for safety reasons. He must, where		Pass. All materials used for this machine areappropriate for their intended useand have adequate life. Pass. The related information has been
	appropriate, indicate the parts subject to wear and the criteria for replacement. Where a risk of rupture or disintegration remains despite the measures taken (e.g. as with grinding wheels) the moving parts must be mounted and positioned in such a way that in case of rupture their fragments will be contained.		provided within the instruction manual. Not applicable. No such risk is possible.
	Both rigid and flexible pipes carrying fluids, particularly those under high pressure, must be able to withstand the foreseen internal and external stresses and must be firmly attached and/or protected against all manner of external stresses and strains; precautions must be taken to ensure that no risk is posed by a rupture (sudden movement, high-pressure jets, etc.). Where the material to be processed is fed to the tool automatically, the following conditions must be fulfilled to avoid risks to the persons exposed (e.g. tool breakage):		Not applicable.
	- when the workpiece comes into contact with the tool the latter must have attained its normal working conditions,		Pass.
	- when the tool starts and/or stops (intentionally or accidentally) the feed movement and the tool movement must be coordinated.		Pass.
1.3.3	Risks due to falling or ejected objects	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$	
	Precautions must be taken to prevent risks from falling or ejected objects (e.g. workpieces, tools, cuttings, fragments, waste, etc.).		
1.3.4	Risks due to surfaces, edges or angles	$\overline{\mathbf{V}}$	
	In so far as their purpose allows, accessible parts of the machinery must have no sharp edges, no sharp angles, and no rough surfaces likely to cause injury.		Pass. No this kind injury has been found.
1.3.5	Risks related to combined machinery		





	Where the machinery is intended to carry out several different operations with the manual removal of the piece between each operation (combined machinery), it must be designed and constructed in such a way as to enable each element to be used separately without the other elements constituting a danger or risk for the exposed person. For this purpose, it must be possible to start and stop separately any elements that are not protected.		Not applicable. No this kind of combined machinery. Not applicable. No this kind of combined machinery.
1.3.6	Risks relating to variations in the rotational speed of tools	\square	Not applicable.
	When the machine is designed to perform operations under different conditions of use (e.g. different speeds or energy supply), it must be designed and constructed in such a way that selection and adjustment of these conditions can be carried out safely and reliably.		
1.3.7	Prevention of risks related to moving parts The moving parts of machinery must be designed, built and laid out to avoid hazards or, where hazards persist, fixed with guards or protective devices in such a way as to prevent all risk of contact which could lead to accidents.		Pass. This kind of hazards have been prevented by appropriate guards.
	All necessary steps must be taken to prevent accidental blockage of moving parts involved in the work.		Pass. All necessary steps have been taken.
	In cases where, despite the precautions taken, a blockage is likely to occur, specific protection devices or tools, the instruction handbook and possibly a sign on the machinery should be provided by the manufacturer to enable the equipment to be safely unblocked.		Not applicable. No this kind of need.
1.3.8	Choice of protection against risks related to moving parts Guards or protection devices used to protect against the risks related to moving parts must be selected on the basis of the type of risk. The following guidelines must be used to help make the choice. A. Moving transmission parts	I	Pass. It is in accordance with the risk assessment.



	Guards designed to protect exposed persons against the risks associated with moving transmission parts (such as pulleys, belts, gears, rack and pinions, shafts, etc.) must be: - either fixed, complying with requirements 1.4.1 and 1.4.2.1, or - movable, complying with requirements 1.4.1 and 1.4.2.2.A. Movable guards should be used where frequent access is foreseen.		See the related clauses. See the related clauses.
	B. Moving parts directly involved in the process Guards or protection devices designed to protect exposed persons against the risks associated with moving parts contributing to the work (such as cutting tools, moving parts of presses, cylinders, parts in the process of being machined, etc.) must be: - wherever possible fixed guards complying with requirements 1.4.1 and 1.4.2.1, - otherwise, movable guards complying with requirements 1.4.1 and 1.4.2.2.B or protection devices such as sensing devices (e.g. non-material barriers, sensor mats), remote-hold protection devices (e.g. two-hand controls), or protection devices intended automatically to prevent all or part of the operator's body from encroaching on the danger zone in accordance with requirements 1.4.1 and 1.4.3. However, when certain moving parts directly involved in the process cannot be made completely or partially inaccessible during operation owing to operations requiring nearby operator intervention, where technically possible such parts must be fitted with: - fixed guards, complying with requirements 1.4.1 and 1.4.2.1 preventing access to those sections of the parts that are not used in the work, - adjustable guards, complying with requirements 1.4.1 and 1.4.2.3 restricting		
1.4	access to those sections of the moving parts that are strictly for the work. Required characteristics of guards and protection devices		
1.4	negalied characteristics of guards and protection devices	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$	
1.4.1	General requirements		



Page 19 of 229

	Guards and protection devices must:			
	- be of robust construction,			Pass. They all can be opened only with
	- not give rise to any additional risk,			tools. Not applicable.
	- not be easy to by-pass or render non-operational,			Not applicable.
	- be located at an adequate distance from the danger zone,			
	- cause minimum obstruction to the view of the production process,			
	- enable essential work to be carried out on installation and/or replacement of tools and also for maintenance by restricting access only to the area where the work has to be done, if possible without the guard or protection device having to be dismantled.			
1.4.2	Special requirements for guards	$\overline{\mathcal{A}}$		
1.4.2.1	<u>Fixed guards</u>			
	Fixed guards must be securely held in place. They must be fixed by systems that can be opened only with tools. Where possible, guards must be unable to remain in place without their fixings.			
1.4.2	Movable guards		$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$	
1.4.2.2	A. Type A movable guards must			
	- as far as possible remain fixed to the machinery when open,			
	- be associated with a locking device to prevent moving parts starting up as long as these parts can be accessed and to give a stop command whenever they are no longer closed.			
1.4.2	B. Type B movable guards must be designed and incorporated into the		$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$	
1.4.2.2	control system so that:			
	- moving parts cannot start up while they are within the operator's reach, - the exposed person cannot reach moving parts once they have started up,			

Page 20 of 229

	 - they can be adjusted only by means of an intentional action, such as the use of a tool, key, etc., - the absence or failure of one of their components prevents starting or stops the moving parts, - protection against any risk of ejection is proved by means of an appropriate barrier. 			
1.4.2	Adjustable guards restricting access		\square	
1.4.2.3	Adjustable guards restricting access to those areas of the moving parts strictly necessary for the work must: - be adjustable manually or automatically according to the type of work involved, - be readily adjustable without the use of tools, - reduce as far as possible the risk of ejection.			
1.4.3	Special requirements for protection devices Protection devices must be designed and incorporated into the control system so that:		Ø	
	- moving parts cannot start up while they are within the operator's reach,			
	 - the exposed person cannot reach moving parts once they have started up, - they can be adjusted only by means of an intentional action, such as the use of a tool, key, etc., - the absence or failure of one of their components prevents starting or stops the moving parts. 			
1.5	Protection against other hazards	V		
1.5.1	Electricity supply			
	Where machinery has an electricity supply it must be designed, constructed and equipped so that all hazards of an electrical nature are or can be prevented. The specific rules in force relating to electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits must apply to machinery which is subject to those limits.			



1.5.2	Static electricity	$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$		
	Machinery must be so designed and constructed as to prevent or limit the build-up of potentially dangerous electrostatic charges and/or be fitted with a discharging system.			
1.5.3	Energy supply other than electricity Where machinery is powered by an energy other than electricity (e.g. hydraulic, pneumatic or thermal energy, etc.), it must be so designed,	$\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$		
	constructed and equipped as to avoid all potential hazards associated with these types of energy.			
1.5.4	Errors of fitting	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$		
	Errors, likely to be made when fitting or refitting certain parts which could be a source of risk must be made impossible by the design of such parts or, failing this, by information given on the parts themselves and/or the housings. The same information must be given on moving parts and/or their housings where the direction of movement must be known to avoid a risk. Any further information that may be necessary must be given in the instructions. Where a faulty connection can be the source of risk, incorrect fluid connections, including electrical conductors, must be made impossible by the design or, failing this, by information given on the pipes, cables, etc. and/or connector blocks.			
1.5.5	Extreme temperatures Steps must be taken to eliminate any risk of injury caused by contact with or proximity to machinery parts or materials at high or very low temperatures. The risk of hot or very cold material being ejected should be assessed. Where this risk exists, the necessary steps must be taken to prevent it or, if this is not technically possible, to render it non-dangerous.			
1.5.6	Fire Machinery must be designed and constructed to avoid all risk of fire or overheating posed by the machinery itself or by gases, liquids, dust, vapours or other substances produced or used by the machinery.		☑	
1.5.7	Explosion		$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$	



	Machinery must be designed and constructed to avoid any risk of explosion posed by the machinery itself or by gases, liquids, dust, vapours or other substances produced or used by the machinery. To that end the manufacturer must take steps to:			
	· ·			
	- avoid a dangerous concentration of products,			
	- prevent combustion of the potentially explosive atmosphere,			
	 minimise any explosion which may occur so that it does not endanger the surroundings. The same precautions must be taken if the manufacturer foresees the use of the machinery in a potentially explosive atmosphere. 			
	Electrical equipment forming part of the machinery must conform, as far as the risk from explosion is concerned, to the provision of the specific Directives in force.			
1.5.8	<u>Noise</u>	$\overline{\mathbf{V}}$		
	Machinery must be so designed and constructed that risks resulting from the emission of airborne noise are reduced to the lowest level taking account of technical progress and the availability of means of reducing noise, in particular at source.			
1.5.9	<u>Vibration</u>		$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$	
	Machinery must be so designed and constructed that risks resulting from vibrations produced by the machinery are reduced to the lowest level, taking account of technical progress and the availability of means of reducing vibration, in particular at source.		_	
1.5.10	Radiation		$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$	
	Machinery must be so designed and constructed that any emission of radiation is limited to the extent necessary for its operation and that the effects on exposed persons are non-existent or reduced to non-dangerous proportions.			
1.5.11	External radiation		$\overline{\Delta}$	
	Machinery must be so designed and constructed that external radiation does not interfere with its operation.			



1.5.12	Laser equipment		$\overline{\mathbf{V}}$	
	Where laser equipment is used, the following provisions should be taken into account: - laser equipment on machinery must be designed and constructed so as to			
	prevent any accidental radiation,			
	- laser equipment on machinery must be protected so that effective radiation, radiation produced by reflection or diffusion and secondary radiation do not damage health,			
	 optical equipment for the observation or adjustment of laser equipment on machinery must be such that no health risk is created by the laser rays. 			
1.5.13	Emissions of dust, gases, etc			
	Machinery must be so designed, constructed and/or equipped that risks due to gases, liquids, dust, vapours and other waste materials which it produces can be avoided.			Adequate design and construction have bee taken
	Where a hazard exists, the machinery must be so equipped that the said substances can be contained and/or evacuated.			
	Where machinery is not enclosed during normal operation, the devices for containment and/or evacuation must be situated as close as possible to the source emission.			All the condition has been considered
1.5.14	Risk of being trapped in a machine			
	Machinery must be designed, constructed or fitted with a means of preventing an exposed person from being enclosed within it or, if that is impossible, with a means of summoning help.			
1.5.15	Risk of slipping, tripping or falling		$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$	
	Parts of the machinery where persons are liable to move about or stand must be designed and constructed to prevent persons slipping, tripping or falling on or off these parts.			
1.6	<u>Maintenance</u>	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$		
1.6.1	Machinery maintenance			



	Adjustment, lubrication and maintenance points must be located outside danger zones. It must be possible to carry out adjustment, maintenance, repair, cleaning and servicing operations while machinery is at a standstill. If one or more of the above conditions cannot be satisfied for technical reasons, these operations must be possible without risk (see 1.2.5).	
	In the case of automated machinery and, where necessary, other machinery, the manufacturer must make provision for a connecting device for mounting diagnostic fault-finding equipment. Automated machine components which have to be changed frequently, in particular for a change in manufacture or where they are liable to wear or likely to deteriorate following an accident, must be capable of being removed and replaced easily and in safety. Access to the components must enable these tasks to be carried out with the necessary technical means (tools, measuring instruments, etc.) in accordance with an operating method specified by the manufacturer.	
1.6.2	Access to operating position and servicing points The manufacturer must provide means of access (stairs, ladders, catwalks, etc.) to allow access in safety to all areas used for production, adjustment and maintenance operations.	Appropriate guards and safety control device have been used
1.6.3	All machinery must be fitted with means to isolate it from all energy sources. Such isolators must be clearly identified. They must be capable of being locked if reconnection could endanger exposed persons. In the case of machinery supplied with electricity through a plug capable of being plugged into a circuit, separation of the plug is sufficient. The isolator must be capable of being locked also where an operator is unable, from any of the points to which he has access, to check that the energy is still cut off. After the energy is cut off, it must be possible to dissipate normally any energy remaining or stored in the circuits of the machinery without risk to exposed persons. As an exception to the above requirements, certain circuits may remain connected to their energy sources in order, for example, to hold parts, protect information, light interiors, etc. In this case, special steps must be taken to ensure operator safety.	The power switch has been used



1.6.4	Operator intervention				
1.0.1	Specials, mise remitted	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$			
	Machinery must be so designed, constructed and equipped that the need for				
	operator intervention is limited.				
	If operator intervention cannot be avoided, it must be possible to carry it out				
	easily and in safety.				
1.6.5	<u>Cleaning of internal parts</u>	\square			
	The machinery must be designed and constructed in such a way that it is				
	possible to clean internal parts which have contained dangerous substances				
	or preparations without entering them; any necessary unblocking must also be				
	possible from the outside. If it is absolutely impossible to avoid entering the				
	machinery, the manufacturer must take steps during its construction to allow				
	cleaning to take place with the minimum of danger.				
1.7	<u>Indicators</u>	\square			
470					
1.7.0	<u>Information devices</u>				
	The information needed to control machinery must be unambiguous and				
	easily understood.				
	It must not be excessive to the extent of overloading the operator.				
	Where the health and safety of exposed persons may be endangered by a				
	fault in the operation of unsupervised machinery, the machinery must be				
	equipped to give an appropriate acoustic or light signal as a warning.				
1.7.1	<u>Warning devices</u>	\square			
	Where machinery is equipped with warning devices (such as signals, etc.),				
	these must be unambiguous and easily perceived.				
	The operator must have facilities to check the operation of such warning				
	devices at all times.				
	The requirements of the specific Directives concerning colours and safety				
	signals must be complied with.				
1.7.2	Warning of residual risks		V		
	Miles de la compine de suite ell the management de det de la compe				
	Where risks remain despite all the measures adopted or in the case of				
	potential risks which are not evident (e.g. electrical cabinets, radioactive sources, bleeding of a hydraulic circuit, hazard in an unseen area, etc.), the				
	manufacturer must provide warnings.				
I	mandiactarer must provide warnings.	l	1	1	



	Such warnings should preferably use readily understandable pictograms and/or be drawn up in one of the languages of the country in which the machinery is to be used, accompanied, on request, by the languages understood by the operators.	
1.7.3	Marking All machinery must be marked legibly and indelibly with the following minimum particulars: - name and address of the manufacturer, - the CE marking (see Annex III), - designation of series or type, - serial number, if any, - the year of construction.	
	Furthermore, where the manufacturer constructs machinery intended for use in a potentially explosive atmosphere, this must be indicated on the machinery. Machinery must also bear full information relevant to its type and essential to its safe use (e.g. maximum speed of certain rotating parts, maximum diameter of tools to be fitted, mass, etc.). Where a machine part must be handled during use with lifting equipment, its mass must be indicated legibly, indelibly and unambiguously. The interchangeable equipment referred to in the third indent of Article 1(2)(a), must bear the same information.	
1.7.4	 Instructions (a) All machinery must be accompanied by instructions including at least the following: a repeat of the information with which the machinery is marked, except the serial number (see 1.7.3) together with any appropriate additional information to facilitate maintenance (e.g. addresses of the importer, repairers, etc.), foreseen use of the machinery within the meaning of 1.1.2(c), 	User manual in English provided



- workstation(s) likely to be occupied by operators,
- instructions for safe:
- putting into service,
- use,
- handling, giving the mass of the machinery and its various parts where they are regularly to be transported separately,
- assembly, dismantling,
- adjustment
- maintenance (servicing and repair),
- where necessary, training instructions,
- where necessary, the essential characteristics of tools which may be fitted to the machinery.

Where necessary, the instructions should draw attention to ways in which the machinery should not be used.

(b) The instructions must be drawn up in one of the Community languages by the manufacturer or his authorised representative established in the Community.

On being put into service, all machinery must be accompanied by a translation of the instructions in the language or languages of the country in which the machinery is to be used and by the instructions in the original language. This translation must be done either by the manufacturer or his authorised representative established in the Community or by the person introducing the machinery into the language area in question.

By way of derogation from this requirement, the maintenance instructions for use by specialised personnel employed by the manufacturer or his authorised representative established in the Community may be drawn up in only one of the Community languages understood by that personnel.

- (c) The instructions must contain the drawings and diagrams necessary for putting into service, maintenance, inspection, checking of correct operation and, where appropriate, repair of the machinery, and all useful instructions in particular with regard to safety.
- (d) Any literature describing the machinery must not contradict the instructions as regards safety aspects. The technical documentation describing the machinery must give information regarding the airborne noise emissions



Page 28 of 229 MD-TCF-230728-49218	
referred to in (f) and, in the case of hand-held and/or hand-guided machinery, information regarding vibration as referred to in 2.2.	
(e) Where necessary, the instructions must give the requirements relating to installation and assembly for reducing noise or vibration (e.g. use of dampers, type and mass of foundation block, etc.). (f) The instructions must give the following information concerning airborne noise emissions by the machinery, either the actual value or a value established on the basis of measurements made on identical machinery: - equivalent continuous A-weighted sound pressure level at workstations, where this exceeds 70 dB(A); where this level does not exceed 70 dB(A), this fact must be indicated, - peak C-weighted instantaneous sound pressure value at workstations, where this exceeds 63 Pa (130 dB in relation to 20 mPa), - sound power level emitted by the machinery where the equivalent continuous A-weighted sound pressure level at workstations exceeds 85 dB(A). In the case of very large machinery, instead of the sound power level, the equivalent continuous sound pressure levels at specified positions around the machinery may be indicated. Where the harmonised standards are not applied, sound levels must be measured using the most appropriate method for the machinery. The manufacturer must indicate the operating conditions of the machinery during measurement and what methods have been used for the measurement. Where the workstation(s) are undefined or cannot be defined, sound pressure levels must be measured at a distance of 1 metre from the surface of the machinery and at a height of 1,60 metres from the floor or access platform.	
The position and value of the maximum sound pressure must be indicated. (g) If the manufacturer foresees that the machinery will be used in a potentially explosive atmosphere, the instructions must give all the necessary information.	
(h) In the case of machinery which may also be intended for use by non-professional operators, the wording and layout of the instructions for use, whilst respecting the other essential requirements mentioned above, must take into account the level of general education and acumen that can reasonably be expected from such operators.	



Technical construction file shall be retained and kept available for the competent national authorities for at least 10 years following the date of manufacture of the machinery or of the last unit produced.				
Safety measures for fulfilling the product conformity requirements	$\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$			
- Critical components shall be checked for every purchasing order if it is comply with the critical component list and relevant conformance and requirements are considered during incoming inspection - Production flow chart and quality control plans	al —			
- Regulatory compliance records for the released machinery. (Availability and compliance)				
¤ Relevant warning signs				
¤ CE Conformity mark				
¤ User manual				
¤ Relevant circuit diagrams				
¤ Relevant accessories, tools and apparatus				
¤ Functional tests				
¤ Mechanical tests				
¤ Electrical safety tests				

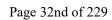


TECHNICAL FILE

	Shanghai Global Testing Services Co., Ltd		Tel· /	
The third party	Floor 2nd, Building D-1, No. 128, Shenfu		Fax: /	
	Road, Minhang District, Shanghai, G	China	rax.	
Name and address of the	Resaeng co., ltd		I	
applicant	401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan,	Republic of	Korea	
Name and address of the	Resaeng co., ltd			
manufacturer	401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea			
Name and address of the factory	Resaeng co., ltd			
(production sites)	401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea			
Product	Mega Reencle			
	RSV2B / RSV2B-1 / RSV2B-2 / RSV2B-3			
Mode/type reference	RSV2C / RSV2C-1 / RSV2C-2 / RSV2C-3			
Wiode/type reference	RSV2D / RSV2D-1 / RSV2D-2 / RSV2D-3 / RSV2D-R			
	HMV2D / HMV2D-1 / HMV2D-2 / HMV2D-3			
Reviewed according to	EN ISO 12100:2010, EN 12852:2001+A1:2010, EN 60204-1:2018,			
Reviewed according to	EN 1672-1:2014, EN 1672-2:2020			
Review Result	PASS			
Review Report No.	MD-TCF-230728-49218			
XX7 1 1 1 1 1	Tony Guo	/	STAG SERCI	
Work carried out by	Director	Signature	S My Aug	
	Kevin Shi	, B		
Word verified by	Manager	Signature		
Date of issue	July 31,2023		ERTIFICATION	
Date of issue	July 31,2023	3.8	CERTIFICATION	



	EN ISO 12100:2010	1	
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
ł.	Strategy for risk assessment and risk reduction		1
	To implement risk assessment and risk reduction the designer shall take the following actions, in the order given:	According to the strategy.	Pass
	a) determine the limits of the machinery, which include the intended use and any reasonably foreseeable misuse thereof;	According to the strategy.	Pass
	b) identify the hazards and associated hazardous situations;	According to the strategy.	Pass
	c) estimate the risk for each identified hazard and hazardous situation;	According to the strategy.	Pass
	d) evaluate the risk and take decisions about the need for risk reduction;	According to the strategy.	Pass
	e) eliminate the hazard or reduce the risk associated with the hazard by means of protective measures. Actions a) to d) are related to risk assessment and e) to risk reduction.	According to the strategy.	Pass
	Risk assessment is a series of logical steps to enable, in a systematic way, the analysis and evaluation of the risks associated with machinery. Risk assessment is followed, whenever necessary, by risk reduction. Iteration of this process can be necessary to eliminate hazards as far as practicable and to adequately reduce risks by the implementation of protective measures.		Pass
	Protective measures are the combination of the measures implemented by the designer and the user in accordance with Figure 2. Measures which can be incorporated at the design stage are preferable to those implemented by the user and usually prove more effective.		Pass
	The objective to be met is the greatest practicable risk reduction, taking into account the four below factors. The strategy defined in this clause is represented by the flowchart in Figure 1. The process itself is iterative and several successive applications can be necessary to reduce the risk, making the best use of available technology. In carrying out this process, it is necessary to take into account these four factors, in the following order of preference: - the safety of the machine during all the phases		Pass



	cycle;		Pass
	—the ability of the machine to perform its		Pass
	function;		
	—the usability of the machine;		Pass
	—the manufacturing, operational and dismantling costs of the machine.		Pass
5.	Risk assessment		_
5.1	General		_
	Risk assessment comprises (see Figure1)	According to the strategy.	Pass
	- risk analysis, comprising		
	1) determination of the limits of the machinery (see 5.3),		Pass
	2) hazard identification (5.4 and Annex B), and		Pass
	3) risk estimation (see 5.5), and		Pass
	- risk evaluation (see 5.6).		Pass
	Risk analysis provides information required for the risk evaluation, which in turn allows judgments to be made about whether or not risk reduction is required.		Pass
	These judgments shall be supported by a qualitative or, where appropriate, quantitative estimate of the risk associated with the hazards present on the machinery.		Pass
	The risk assessment shall be documented according to Clause 7.		Pass
5.2	Information for risk assessment		
	The information for risk assessment should include the following.	According to the strategy.	_
	a) Related to machinery description:		
	1) user specifications;		Pass
	2) anticipated machinery specifications, including		Pass
	i) a description of the various phases of the whole life cycle of the machinery,		Pass
	ii) design drawings or other means of establishing the nature of the machinery, and		Pass
	iii) required energy sources and how they are supplied;		Pass
	3) documentation on previous designs of similar machinery, if relevant;		N/A
	4) information for use of the machinery, as available.	See instruction	Pass
	b) Related to regulations, standards and other applicable documents:		
	1) applicable regulations;		Pass
	2) relevant standards;		Pass
	3) relevant technical specifications;		Pass



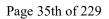
Page 33rd of 229

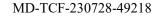
	1 age 331d 01 227	WID-1C1-230720-	1/210
	4) relevant safety data sheets.		Pass
	c) Related to experience of use:		
	1) any accident, incident or malfunction history of the actual or similar machinery;		Pass
	2) the history of damage to health resulting, for example, from emissions (noise, vibration, dust, fumes,etc.), chemicals used or materials processed by the machinery;		Pass
	3) the experience of users of similar machines and, whenever practicable, an exchange of information with the potential users.		Pass
	d) Relevant ergonomic principles.		_
	The information shall be updated as the design develops or when modifications to the machine are required.	According to the strategy.	Pass
	Comparisons between similar hazardous situations associated with different types of machinery are often possible, provided that sufficient information about hazards and accident circumstances in those situations is available.		Pass
	For quantitative analysis, data from databases, handbooks, laboratories or manufacturers' specifications may be used, provided that there is confidence in the suitability of the data. Uncertainty associated with these data shall be indicated in the documentation (see Clause 7).		Pass
5.3	Determination of limits of machinery		
5.3.1	General		_
	Risk assessment begins with the determination of the limits of the machinery, taking into account all the phases of the machinery life. This means that the characteristics and performances of the machine or a series of machines in an integrated process, and the related people, environment and products, should be identified in terms of the limits of machinery as given in 5.3.2 to 5.3.5	According to the strategy.	Pass
5.3.2	Use limits		
	Use limits include the intended use and the reasonably foreseeable misuse. Aspects to be taken into account include the following:		Pass
	a) the different machine operating modes and different	See the instruction	Pass
	intervention procedures for the users, including		
	interventions required by malfunctions of the machine;		
	b) the use of the machinery (for example, industrial, non-industrial and domestic) by persons		Pass



Page 34th of 229

	1 age 34th 01 22)	WID-1C1-230720-	7/210
	identified by		
	sex, age, dominant hand usage, or limiting		
	physical		
	abilities (visual or hearing impairment, size,		
	strength,etc.);		D
	c) the anticipated levels of training, experience		Pass
	or ability of users including		
	1) operators,		Pass
	· · ·		
	2) maintenance personnel or technicians,		Pass
	3) trainees and apprentices, and		Pass
	4) the general public;		Pass
	d) exposure of other persons to the hazards		Pass
	associated		
	with the machinery where it can be reasonably foreseen:		
	1) persons likely to have a good awareness of		Pass
	the		
	specific hazards, such as operators of adjacent		
	machinery;		
	2) persons with little awareness of the specific		Pass
	hazards		
	but likely to have a good awareness of site		
	safety procedures, authorized routes, etc., such		
	as		
	administration staff;		5
	3) persons likely to have very little awareness of the		Pass
	machine hazards or the site safety procedures,		
	such as visitors or members of the general		
	public,		
	including children.		
	If specific information is not available in		N/A
	relation to b),		
	above, the manufacturer should take into		
	account		
	general information on the intended user		
	population (for		
	example, appropriate anthropometric data).		
	5.3.3 Space limits Agranta of grand limits to be taken into account		
	Aspects of space limits to be taken into account include		
	a) the range of movement,		Pass
	b) space requirements for persons interacting		Pass
	with the		
	machine, such as during operation and		
	maintenance,		
	c) human interaction such as the operator-		Pass
	machine interface, and		
	d) the machine-power supply interface.		Pass
5.3.4	Time limits		







	1 480 00 41 01 22		
	Aspects of time limits to be taken into account		
	include:		D
	a) the life limit of the machinery and/or of some		Pass
	of its components (tooling, parts that can wear,		
	electromechanical components, etc.), taking		
	into account its intended use and reasonably		
	foreseeable misuse, and		
	b) recommended service intervals.		Pass
5.3.5	Other limits		
	Examples of other limits include:		_
	a) properties of the material(s) to be processed,		N/A
	b) housekeeping — the level of cleanliness required, and		N/A
	c) environmental — the recommended	See the instruction	Pass
	minimum and maximum temperatures, whether		
	the machine can be operated indoors or		
	outdoors, in dry or wet weather, in direct		
	sunlight, tolerance to dust and wet, etc		
5.4	Hazard identification		
	After determination of the limits of the		Pass
	machinery, the essential step in any risk		
	assessment of the machinery is the systematic		
	identification of reasonably foreseeable hazards		
	(permanent hazards and those which can appear		
	unexpectedly), hazardous situations and/or		
	hazardous events during all phases of the		
	machine life cycle, i.e.:		
	- transport, assembly and installation;		Pass
	-commissioning;		Pass
	- use;		Pass
	- dismantling, disabling and scrapping.		Pass
	Only when hazards have been identified can		Pass
	steps be taken to eliminate them or to reduce		
	risks. To accomplish this hazard identification,		
	it is necessary to identify the operations to be		
	performed by the machinery and the tasks to be		
	performed by persons who interact with it,		
	taking into account the different parts,		
	mechanisms or functions of the machine, the		
	materials to be processed, if any, and the		
	environment in which the machine can be used.		
	The designer shall identify hazards taking into		
	account the following.		
	a) Human interaction during the whole life cycle of the machine		
	Task identification should consider all tasks	According to the	Pass
	associated with every phase of the machine life	strategy.	1 433
	cycle as given	Sharegy.	
	above. Task identification should also take into		
	account,		
	but not be limited to, the following task		
	out not be infined to, the following task		



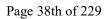
Page 36th of 229

categories:	1112 101 230720	
		Pass
-setting;		
- testing;		Pass
- teaching/programming;		Pass
- process/tool changeover;		Pass
- start-up;		Pass
- all modes of operation;		Pass
- feeding the machine;		Pass
- removal of product from machine;		Pass
- stopping the machine;		Pass
-stopping the machine in case of emergency;		Pass
- recovery of operation from jam or blockage;		Pass
-restart after unscheduled stop;		Pass
-		
-fault-finding/trouble-shooting (operator intervention);		Pass
-cleaning and housekeeping;		Pass
- preventive maintenance;		Pass
-corrective maintenance		Pass
All reasonably foreseeable hazards, hazardous		Pass
situations or hazardous events associated with		L WSS
the		
various tasks shall then be identified. Annex B		
gives		
examples of hazards, hazardous situations and		
hazardous events to assist in this process.		
Several		
methods are available for the systematic		
identification of		
hazards. See also ISO/TR 14121-2.		D
In addition, reasonably foreseeable hazards, hazardous		Pass
situations or hazardous events not directly		
related to		
tasks shall be identified.		
b) Possible states of the machine		
These are as follows:		
1) the machine performs the intended function		Pass
(the		1 433
machine operates normally);		
2) the machine does not perform the intended		Pass
function		
(i.e. it malfunctions) due to a variety of		
reasons,including		
- variation of a property or of a dimension of the		Pass
 processed material or of the workpiece,		
 - failure of one or more of its component parts		Pass
or .		
services,		
- external disturbances (for example, shocks,		Pass



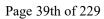
Page 37th of 229 MD-TCF-230728-49218

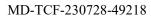
	1 age 37th 01 227	WID-1C1-230720-	7/210
	electromagnetic interference),		
	- design error or deficiency (for example, software		Pass
	errors),		Pass
	- disturbance of its power supply, and		Pass
	-surrounding conditions (for example, damaged floor surfaces).		Pass
	c) Unintended behaviour of the operator or reasonably foreseeable misuse of the machine		_
	Examples include - loss of control of the machine by the operator (especially for hand-held or mobile machines),		Pass
	- reflex behaviour of a person in case of malfunction, incident or failure during the use of the machine,		Pass
	- behaviour resulting from lack of concentration or carelessness,		Pass
	- behaviour resulting from taking the "line of least resistance" in carrying out a task,		Pass
	- behaviour resulting from pressures to keep the machine running in all circumstances, and		Pass
	- behaviour of certain persons (for example, children, disabled persons).		Pass
5.5	Risk estimation		_
5.5.1	General		
	After hazard identification, risk estimation shall be carried out for each hazardous situation by determining the elements of risk given in 5.5.2. When determining these elements, it is necessary to take into account then aspects given in 5.5.3.	According to the strategy.	Pass
	C	According to the strategy.	Pass
	-estimate the risk associated with the emissions,		Pass
	-evaluate the effectiveness of the protective measures implemented at the design stage,		Pass
	-provide potential buyers with quantitative information on emissions in the technical documentation, and		Pass
	- provide users with quantitative information on emissions in the information for use.		Pass
	Hazards other than emissions that are described by measurable parameters can be dealt with in a similar manner.		Pass
5.5.2	Elements of risk		
		1	<u> </u>





	rage 36th of 22)	WID 1 C1 230720	17210
5.5.2.1	General		_
	The risk associated with a particular hazardous situation depends on the following elements: a) the severity of harm;	According to the strategy.	Pass
	b) the probability of occurrence of that harm, which is a function of 1) the exposure of person(s) to the hazard, 2) the occurrence of a hazardous event, and 3) the technical and human possibilities to avoid or limit the harm.		Pass
5.5.2.2	Severity of harm		
	The severity can be estimated by taking into account the following: a) the severity of injuries or damage to health, for example, -slight, -serious, - death.		Pass
	b) the extent of harm, for example, to - one person, - several persons.		Pass
	When carrying out a risk assessment, the risk from the most likely severity of the harm that is likely to occur from each identified hazard shall be considered, but the highest foreseeable severity shall also be taken into account, even if the probability of such an occurrence is not high.		Pass
5.5.2.3	Probability of occurrence of harm		
5.5.2.3. 1	Exposure of persons to the hazard		
	The exposure of a person to the hazard influences the probability of the occurrence of harm. Factors to be taken into account when estimating the exposure are, among others,	According to the strategy.	Pass
	a) the need for access to the hazard zone (for normal operation, correction of malfunction, maintenance or repair, etc.),		Pass
	b) the nature of access (for example, manual feeding of materials),		Pass
	c) the time spent in the hazard zone,		Pass
	d) the number of persons requiring access, and		Pass
	e) the frequency of access.		Pass
5.5.2.3. 2	Occurrence of a hazardous event		_







	Page 39th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-2	7210
	The occurrence of a hazardous event influences the probability of occurrence of harm. Factors to be taken into account when estimating the occurrence of a hazardous event are, among others, a) reliability and other statistical data,		
	b) accident history,c) history of damage to health, andd) comparison of risks (see 5.6.3).		
5.5.2.3. 3	Possibility of avoiding or limiting harm		_
	The possibility of avoiding or limiting harm influences the probability of occurrence of harm. Factors to be taken into account when estimating the possibility of avoiding or limiting harm are, among others, the following:	According to the strategy.	Pass
	a) different persons who can be exposed to the hazard(s), for example,skilled,unskilled;		Pass
	b) how quickly the hazardous situation could lead to harm, for example, - suddenly, - quickly, - slowly;		Pass
	 c) any awareness of risk, for example, by general information, in particular, information for use, by direct observation, through warning signs and indicating devices, in particular, on the machinery; 		Pass
	d) the human ability to avoid or limit harm (for example, reflex, agility, possibility of escape);		Pass
	e) practical experience and knowledge, for example, - of the machinery, - of similar machinery, - no experience.		Pass
5.5.3	Aspects to be considered during risk estimation		
5.5.3.1	Persons exposed		
	Risk estimation shall take into account all persons (operators and others) for whom exposure to the hazard is reasonably foreseeable.	According to the strategy.	Pass
5.5.3.2	Type, frequency and duration of exposure		
	The estimation of the exposure to the hazard under consideration (including long-term damage to health)	According to the strategy.	Pass

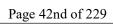


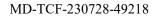
	Page 40th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	19218
	requires analysis of, and shall account for, all		
	modes of		
	operation of the machinery and methods of		
	working. In		
	particular, the analysis shall account for the		
	needs for		
	access during loading/unloading, setting,		
	teaching, process changeover or correction,		
	cleaning,		
	fault-finding and maintenance.		
	The risk estimation shall also take into account		Pass
	tasks, for		
	which it is necessary to suspend protective		
	measures.		
5.5.3.3	Relationship between exposure and effects		_
	The relationship between an exposure to a	According to the	Pass
	hazard and	strategy.	455
	its effects shall be taken into account for each	83	
	hazardous situation considered. The effects of		
	accumulated exposure and combinations of		
	hazards		
	shall also be considered. When considering		
	these		
	effects, risk estimation shall, as far as		
	practicable, be		
	based on appropriate recognized data.		
5.5.3.4	Human factors		
3.3.3.1	Human factors can affect risk and shall be taken		D
	into		Pass
	account in the risk estimation, including, for		
	example,		
	a) the interaction of person(s) with the		
	machinery,		
	including correction of malfunction,		
	b) interaction between persons,		Pass
	-		Pass
	c) stress-related aspects,		
	d) ergonomic aspects,		Pass
	e) the capacity of persons to be aware of risks in		Pass
	a given		
	situation depending on their training, experience		
	and		
	ability,		_
	f) fatigue aspects, and		Pass
	g) aspects of limited abilities (due to disability,		Pass
	age, etc.).		
	Training, experience and ability can affect risk;	_	Pass
		strategy	
	nevertheless, none of these factors shall be used		
	as a		
	substitute for hazard elimination, risk reduction		
	by		
	inherently safe design measure or safeguarding,		



Page 41st of 229	MD-TCF-230728-49218
otective measures can be	

	Page 41st of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-2	19218
	wherever these protective measures can be practicably		
	implemented.		
5.5.3.5	Suitability of protective measures		_
	Risk estimation shall take into account the suitability of protective measures and shall		Pass
	a) identify the circumstances which can result in harm,		Pass
	b) whenever appropriate, be carried out using quantitative methods to compare alternative protective measures (see ISO/TR 14121-2), and		N/A
	c) provide information that can assist with the selection of appropriate protective measures.		Pass
	When estimating risk, those components and systems identified as immediately increasing the risk in case of failure need special attention.		Pass
	When protective measures include work organization, correct behaviour, attention, application of personal protective equipment (PPE), skill or training, the relatively low reliability of such measures compared with proven technical protective measures shall be taken into account in the risk estimation.		Pass
5.5.3.6	Possibility of defeating or circumventing protective measures		
	For the continued safe operation of a machine, it is important that the protective measures allow its easy use and do not hinder its intended use. Otherwise, there is a possibility that protective measures might be bypassed in order for maximum utility of the machine to be achieved.	According to the strategy.	Pass
	Risk estimation shall take account of the possibility of defeating or circumventing protective measures. It shall also take account of the incentive to defeat or circumvent protective measures when, for example,		Pass
	a) the protective measure slows down production or interferes with another activity or preference of the user,		Pass
	b) the protective measure is difficult to use,		Pass
	c) persons other than the operator are involved, or		Pass
	d) the protective measure is not recognized by the user or not accepted as being suitable for its function.		Pass
	Whether or not a protective measure can be defeated depends on both the type of protective measure, such as an adjustable guard or programmable trip device, and its design details.	According to the strategy.	Pass
	Protective measures that use programmable	According to the	Pass
	•		







	electronic	strategy and	
5.5.3.7	systems introduce additional possibilities of defeat or circumvention if access to safety-related software is not appropriately restricted by design and monitoring methods. Risk estimation shall identify where safety-related functions are not separated from other machine functions and shall determine the extent to which access is possible. This is particularly important when remote access for diagnostic or process correction purposes is required. Ability to maintain protective measures		Pass
	Risk estimation shall consider whether the protective measures can be maintained in the condition necessary to provide the required level of protection.		Pass
5.5.3.8	Information for use		
	Risk estimation shall take into account the information for use, as available. See also 6.4.		Pass
5.6	Risk evaluation		_
5.6.1	General		
	After risk estimation has been completed, risk evaluation shall be carried out to determine if risk reduction is required. If risk reduction is required, then appropriate protective measures shall be selected and applied (see Clause 6). As shown in Figure 1, the adequacy of the risk reduction shall be determined after applying each of the three steps of risk reduction described in Clause 6. As part of this iterative process, the designer shall also check whether additional hazards are introduced or other risks increased when new protective measures are applied. If additional hazards do occur, they shall be added to the list of identified hazards and appropriate protective measures will be required to address them. Achieving the objectives of risk reduction and a favourable outcome of risk comparison applied		Pass
	when practicable gives confidence that risk has been adequately reduced.		
5.6.2	Adequate risk reduction Application of the three-step method described in 6.1 is essential in achieving adequate risk reduction. Following the application of the three-step method, adequate risk reduction is achieved when		Pass
	- all operating conditions and all intervention procedures		Pass
	have been considered,		Pass

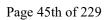


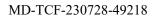
	1 age +31d 01 22)	WID-1C1-230720-	1,7210
	- the hazards have been eliminated or risks reduced to the lowest practicable level,		Pass
	- any new hazards introduced by the protective measures have been properly addressed,		Pass
	- users are sufficiently informed and warned about the residual risks (see 6.1, step 3),		Pass
	- protective measures are compatible with one another,		Pass
	- sufficient consideration has been given to the consequences that can arise from the use in a nonprofessional/ non-industrial context of a machine designed for professional/industrial use, and		Pass
	- the protective measures do not adversely affect the operator's working conditions or the usability of the machine.		Pass
5.6.3	Comparison of risks		
	As part of the process of risk evaluation, the risks associated with the machinery or parts of machinery can be compared with those of similar machinery or parts of machinery, provided the following criteria apply: - the similar machinery is in accordance with the relevant type-C standard(s);		N/A
	- the intended use, reasonably foreseeable misuse and the way both machines are designed and constructed are comparable;		N/A
	- the hazards and the elements of risk are comparable;		N/A
	- the technical specifications are comparable;		N/A
	- the conditions for use are comparable.		N/A
	The use of this comparison method does not eliminate the need to follow the risk assessment process as described in this International Standard for the specific conditions of use. For example, when a band saw used for cutting meat is compared with a band saw used for cutting wood, the risks associated with the different material shall be assessed.		N/A
6	Risk reduction		
6.1	General		
	The objective of risk reduction can be achieved by the elimination of hazards, or by separately or simultaneously reducing each of the two elements that determine the associated risk: _ severity of harm from the hazard under	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	consideration;		
	_ probability of occurrence of that harm. All protective measures intended for reaching this objective shall be applied in the following		



Page 44th of 229

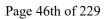
	Page 44th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	19218
	sequence, referred to as the three-step method (see also Figures 1 and 2).		
6.2	Inherently safe design measures		
6.2.1	General		
	Inherently safe design measures are the first and most important step in the risk reduction process because protective measures inherent to the characteristics of the machine are likely to remain effective, whereas	Appropriate machine design has been performed by the manufacturer.	Pass
	experience has shown that even well-designed safeguarding may fail or be violated and information for use may not be followed.		
	Inherently safe design measures are achieved by avoiding hazards or reducing risks by a suitable choice of design features of the machine itself and/or interaction between the exposed persons and the machine. NOTE See 6.3 for safeguarding and complementary measures that can be used to achieve the risk reduction objectives in the case where inherently safe design measures are not sufficient (see 6.1 for the three-step method).	Appropriate machine design has been performed by the manufacturer.	Pass
6.2.2	Consideration of geometrical factors and physical aspects		
6.2.2.1	Geometrical factors		Pass
	Such factors include the following.		
	a) The form of machinery is designed to maximize direct visibility of the working areas and hazard zones from the control position — reducing blind spots, for example — and choosing and locating means of indirect vision where necessary (mirrors, etc.) so as to take into account the characteristics of human vision, particularly when safe operation requires permanent direct control by the operator, for example: _ the travelling and working area of mobile machines; _ the zone of movement of lifted loads or of the carrier of machinery for lifting persons;	Appropriate machine design has been performed by the manufacturer.	Pass
	_ the area of contact of the tool of a hand-held or hand-guided machine with the material being worked. The design of the machine shall be such that, from the main control position, the operator is able to ensure that there are no exposed persons in the danger zones.		

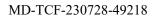






	b) The form and the relative location of the mechanical components parts: for instance, crushing and shearing hazards are avoided by increasing the minimum gap between the moving parts, such that the part of the body under consideration can enter the gap safely, or by reducing the gap so that no part of the body can enter it (see ISO 13854 and ISO 13857).	Appropriate machine design has been performed by the manufacturer.	Pass
	c) Avoiding sharp edges and corners, protruding parts: in so far as their purpose allows, accessible parts of the machinery shall have no sharp edges, no sharp angles, no rough surfaces, no protruding parts likely to cause injury, and no openings which can "trap" parts of the body or clothing. In particular, sheet metal edges shall be deburred, flanged or trimmed, and open ends of tubes which can cause a "trap" shall be capped.	Appropriate machine design has been performed by the manufacturer.	Pass
	d) The form of the machine is designed so as to achieve a suitable working position and provide accessible manual controls (actuators).	Appropriate machine design has been performed by the manufacturer.	Pass
6.2.2.2	Physical aspects		-
	Such aspects include the following:		-
	a) limiting the actuating force to a sufficiently low value so that the actuated part does not generate a mechanical hazard;	The actuating force has been limited to be a sufficiently low value so that the actuated part does not generate a mechanical hazard.	Pass
	b) limiting the mass and/or velocity of the movable elements, and hence their kinetic energy;	The mass and/or velocity of the movable elements, and hence their kinetic energy have been limited.	Pass
	c) limiting the emissions by acting on the characteristics of the source using measures for reducing 1) noise emission at source (see ISO/TR 11688-1), 2) the emission of vibration at source, such as redistribution or addition of mass and changes of process parameters [for example, frequency and/or amplitude of movements (for hand-held and hand-guided machinery, see CR 1030-1)], 3) the emission of hazardous substances,	The emissions by acting on the characteristics of the source have been limited.	Pass







	- A	1 age 40th of 22)	WID-1C1-230720-	7210
	6.2.3	including the use of less hazardous substances or dust-reducing processes (granules instead of powders, milling instead of grinding), and 4) radiation emissions, including, for example, avoiding the use of hazardous radiation sources, limiting the power of radiation to the lowest level sufficient for the proper functioning of the machine, designing the source so that the beam is concentrated on the target, increasing the distance between the source and the operator or providing for remote operation of the machinery [measures for reducing emission of non-ionizing radiation are given in 6.3.4.5 (see also EN 12198-1 and EN 12198-3)] Taking into account general technical knowledge of machine design	MD 1C1 230720	
		This general technical knowledge can be derived from technical specifications for design (standards, design codes, calculation rules, etc.), which should be used to cover		
		a) mechanical stresses such as		
		- stress limitation by implementation of correct calculation, construction and fastening methods as regards, for example, bolted assemblies and welded assemblies,	The appropriate technical knowledge of mechanical has been taken into account.	Pass
		- stress limitation by overload prevention (bursting disk, pressure-limiting valves, breakage points, torque-limiting devices, etc.),	The appropriate technical knowledge of mechanical has been taken into account.	Pass
		- avoiding fatigue in elements under variable stresses (notably cyclic stresses),	The appropriate technical knowledge of mechanical has been taken into account.	Pass
		- static and dynamic balancing of rotating elements,	The appropriate technical knowledge of mechanical has been taken into account.	Pass
İ		b) materials and their properties such as		
		- resistance to corrosion, ageing, abrasion and wear,	The materials have been treated by appropriate methods.	Pass
-				

	Page 47th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	49218
	- hardness, ductility, brittleness,	The materials have been treated by appropriate methods.	Pass
	- homogeneity,	The materials have been treated by appropriate methods.	Pass
	- toxicity,	The materials have been treated by appropriate methods.	Pass
	- flammability	The materials have been treated by appropriate methods.	Pass
	c) emission values for		
	- noise,	No noise will result in hazard in this machine.	Pass
	- vibration,	No vibration will result in hazard in this machine.	Pass
	- hazardous substances,	No hazardous substances will result in hazard in this machine.	Pass
	- radiation	No radiation will result in hazard in this machine.	Pass
	When the reliability of particular components or assemblies is critical for safety (for example, ropes, chains, lifting accessories for lifting loads or persons), stress limits shall be multiplied by appropriate working coefficients.	Appropriate working coefficients have been taken into account during design and calculation.	Pass
6.2.4	Choice of appropriate technology		
	One or more hazards can be eliminated or risks reduced by the choice of the technology to be used in certain applications such as the following:		
	 a) on machines intended for use in explosive atmospheres, using appropriately selected pneumatic or hydraulic control system and machine actuators, intrinsically safe electrical equipment (see IEC 60079-11); 	Not applicable.	N/A
	b) for particular products to be processed (for example, by a solvent), by using equipment that ensures the temperature will remain far below the flash point;	Not applicable.	N/A

c) the use of alternative equipment to avoid

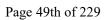
The appropriate

Pass



Page 48th of 229

	1 age 48th 01 227	MID-1C1-230726-	17210
	high noise levels, such as - electrical instead of pneumatic equipment, - in certain conditions, water-cutting instead of mechanical equipment.	technology has been chosen.	
6.2.5	Applying principle of positive mechanical action		
	Positive mechanical action is achieved when a moving mechanical component inevitably moves another component along with it, either by direct contact or via rigid elements. An example of this is positive opening operation of switching devices in an electrical circuit (see IEC 60947-5-1 and ISO 14119).	The principle of the positive mechanical action of a component on another component has been applied.	Pass
6.2.6	Provisions for stability		
	Machines shall be designed so that they have sufficient stability to allow them to be used safely in their specified conditions of use.	These machines have been designed to have sufficient stability to allow them to be used safely in their specified conditions of use.	Pass
	Factors to be taken into account include		
	- the geometry of the base,	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	- the weight distribution, including loading,	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	- the dynamic forces due to movements of parts of the machine, of the machine itself or of elements held by the machine which can result in an overturning moment,	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	- vibration	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	- oscillations of the centre of gravity,	Not applicable.	N/A
	- characteristics of the supporting surface in case of travelling or installation on different sites (ground conditions, slope, etc.),	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	- external forces, such as wind pressure and manual forces.	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	Stability shall be considered in all phases of the life cycle of the machine, including handling, travelling, installation, use, dismantling, disabling and scrapping.	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	Other protective measures for stability relevant to safeguarding are given in 6.3.2.6.	Please see the related clause.	Pass

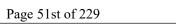


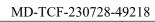


	1 age +7th 01 227	WID-1C1-230720-	.,
6.2.7	Provisions for maintainability When designing a machine, the following maintainability factors shall be taken into account to enable maintenance of the machine:		
	- accessibility, taking into account the environment and the human body measurements, including the dimensions of the working clothes and tools used;	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	- ease of handling, taking into account human capabilities;	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	- limitation of the number of special tools and equipment.	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Pass
6.2.8	Observing ergonomic principles		
	Ergonomic principles shall be taken into account in designing machinery so as to reduce the mental or physical stress of, and strain on, the operator.	Appropriate ergonomic principles have been taken into account in designing machinery to reduce mental or physical stress and strain of the operator.	Pass
	These principles shall be considered when allocating functions to operator and machine (degree of automation) in the basic design.	These principles have been taken into account during allocating functions to operator and machine.	Pass
	Account shall be taken of body sizes likely to be found in the intended user population, strengths and postures, movement amplitudes, frequency of cyclic actions (see ISO 10075 and ISO 10075-2).	All these factors have been taken into account during design.	Pass
	All elements of the operator—machine interface, such as controls, signalling or data display elements, shall be designed to be easily understood so that clear and unambiguous interaction between the operator and the machine is possible. See EN 614-1, EN 13861 and IEC 61310-1.	All arrangement and design of manual controls have been checked in compliance with.	Pass
	The designer's attention is particularly drawn to following ergonomic aspects of machine design.		-
	a) Avoid the necessity for stressful postures and movements during the use of the machine (for example, providing facilities to adjust the	Stressful postures and movements during use of the	Pass



Page 50th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-492	18
machine to suit the various operators).	machine have been avoided.	
b) Design machines, especially hand-held mobile machines, so as to enable them to be operated easily, taking into account human effort, actuation of controls and hand, arm leg anatomy.	been adjusted to the human strength and	ass
c) Limit as far as possible noise, vibration thermal effects such as extreme temperature		ass
d) Avoid linking the operator's working rhythm to an automatic succession of cycle		ass
e) Provide local lighting on or in the mach for the illumination of the working area an adjusting, setting-up and frequent maintenance zones when the design featur of the machine and/or its guards render the ambient lighting inadequate. Flicker, dazzling, shadows and stroboscop effects shall be avoided if they can cause a risk. If the position or the lighting source has to be adjusted, its location shall be such that it does not cause any risk to persons making the adjustment.	had of have been taken into account during design.	ass
f) Select, locate and identify manual contro (actuators) so that	ols -	
- they are clearly visible and identifiable, a appropriately marked where necessary (see 6.4.4),		ass
- they can be safely operated without hesitation or loss of time and without ambiguity (for example, a standard layout controls reduces the possibility of error whan operator changes from a machine to another one of similar type having the sampattern of operation),	arrangement of the control logic have been checked in compliance with this	ass
- their location (for push-buttons) and their movement (for levers and hand wheels) ar consistent with their effect (see IEC 61310	e been checked in	ass
- their operation cannot cause additional ri	sk. Pa	ass
Where a control is designed and constructed to perform several different actions—namely, where there is no one-to-one correspondence (for example, keyboards)		/A





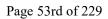


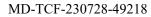
	- 18 - 0 - 1 - 1 - 2		
	the action to be performed shall be clearly		
	displayed and subject to confirmation where necessary.		
	Controls shall be so arranged that their layout, travel and resistance to operation are compatible with the action to be performed, taking account of ergonomic principles. Constraints due to the necessary or foreseeable use of personal protective equipment (such as footwear, gloves) shall be taken into account.	All the arrangement of the control logic have been checked in compliance with this requirement.	Pass
	g) Select, design and locate indicators, dials and visual display units so that		
	- they fit within the parameters and characteristics of human perception,		Pass
	- information displayed can be detected, identified and interpreted conveniently, i.e. long-lasting, distinct, unambiguous and understandable with respect to the operator's requirements and the intended use,		Pass
	- the operator is able to perceive them from the control position.		Pass
6.2.9	Electrical hazards		
	For the design of the electrical equipment of machines, IEC 60204-1 gives general provisions about disconnection and switching of electrical circuits and for protection against electric shock.	Please also make reference to EN 60204-1 test report.	Pass
	For requirements related to specific machines, see corresponding IEC standards (for example, IEC 61029, IEC 60745 or IEC 60335).		N/A
6.2.10	Pneumatic and hydraulic hazards		-
	Pneumatic and hydraulic equipment of machinery shall be designed so that		
	- the maximum rated pressure cannot be exceeded in the circuits (using, for example, pressure-limiting devices),	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	- no hazard results from pressure fluctuations or increases, or from loss of pressure or vacuum,	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	- no hazardous fluid jet or sudden hazardous movement of the hose (whiplash) results from leakage or component failures,	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	- air receivers, air reservoirs or similar vessels (such as in gas-loaded accumulators) comply with the applicable design standard codes or regulations for these elements,	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	- all elements of the equipment, especially	This requirement is	Pass



Page 52nd of 229

	Page 32nd of 229	MD-1CF-230/28	-49210
	pipes and hoses, are protected against harmful external effects,	complied with.	
	- as far as possible, reservoirs and similar vessels (for example, gas-loaded accumulators) are automatically depressurized when isolating the machine from its power supply (see 6.3.5.4) and, if not possible, means are provided for their isolation, local depressurizing and pressure indication (see also ISO 14118:2000, Clause 5),	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	- all elements which remain under pressure after isolation of the machine from its power supply are provided with clearly identified exhaust devices, and there is a warning label drawing attention to the necessity of depressurizing those elements before any setting or maintenance activity on the machine.	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
6.2.11	Applying inherently safe design measures to control systems		-
6.2.11. 1	General		-
	The design measures of the control system shall be chosen so that their safety-related performance provides a sufficient amount of risk reduction (see ISO 13849-1 or IEC 62061).	Inherently safe design measures to control system have applied.	Pass
	The correct design of machine control systems can avoid unforeseen and potentially hazardous machine behaviour.		Pass
	Typical causes of hazardous machine behaviour are		
	- an unsuitable design or modification (accidental or deliberate) of the control system logic,	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
	- a temporary or permanent defect or failure of one or several components of the control system,	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
	- a variation or a failure in the power supply of the control system,	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
	- inappropriate selection, design and location of the control devices.	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
	Typical examples of hazardous machine behaviour are		
	- unexpected start-up (see ISO 14118),	No this kind of hazard in this	Pass







Page 53rd of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-4	7/210
	machine	
- uncontrolled speed change,	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
- failure to stop moving parts,	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
- dropping or ejection of part of the machine or of a workpiece clamped by the machine,	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
- machine action resulting from inhibition (defeating or failure) of protective devices.	No this kind of hazard in this machine	Pass
In order to prevent hazardous machine behaviour and to achieve safety functions, the design of control systems shall comply with the principles and methods presented in this subclause (6.2.11) and in 6.2.12.	The design of control systems comply with the related principles and methods	Pass
These principles and methods shall be applied singly or in combination as appropriate to the circumstances (see ISO 13849-1, IEC 60204-1 and IEC		
62061).		
Control systems shall be designed to enable the operator to interact with the machine safely and easily. This requires one or several of the following solutions:		
- systematic analysis of start and stop conditions;	Systematic analysis have been applied.	Pass
- provision for specific operating modes (for example, start-up after normal stop, restart after cycle interruption or after emergency stop, removal of the workpieces contained in the machine, operation of a part of the machine in case of a failure of a machine element);	Enough provisions have been provided.	Pass
- clear display of the faults;		Pass
- measures to prevent accidental generation of unexpected start commands (for example, shrouded start device) likely to cause dangerous machine behaviour (see ISO 14118:2000, Figure 1);	Main switch with lock and related devices are provided.	Pass
- maintained stop commands (for example, interlock) to prevent restarting that could result in dangerous machine behaviour (see ISO 14118:2000, Figure 1).	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
An assembly of machines may be divided into several zones for emergency stopping, for stopping as a result of protective devices		N/A





	Page 34th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-2	19218
	and/or for isolation and energy dissipation. The different zones shall be clearly defined and it shall be obvious which parts of the machine belong to which zone. Likewise, it shall be obvious which control devices (for example, emergency stop devices, supply disconnecting devices) and/or protective devices belong to which zone. The interfaces between zones shall be designed such that no function in one zone creates hazards in another zone which has been stopped for an intervention.		
	Control systems shall be designed to limit the movements of parts of the machinery, the machine itself, or work pieces and/or loads held by the machinery, to the safe design parameters (for example, range, speed, acceleration, deceleration, load capacity). Allowance shall be made for dynamic effects (swinging of loads, etc.).	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
6.2.11.	Starting of an internal power source/switching on an external power supply		
	The starting of an internal power source or switching-on of an external power supply shall not result in a hazardous situation.	Please also make reference to EN 60204-1 test report.	Pass
6.2.11.	Starting/stopping of a mechanism		
	The primary action for starting or accelerating the movement of a mechanism should be performed by the application or an increase of voltage or fluid pressure, or — if binary logic elements are considered — by passage from state 0 to state 1 (where state 1 represents the highest energy state).	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	The primary action for stopping or slowing down should be performed by removal or reduction of voltage or fluid pressure, or — if binary logic elements are considered — by passage from state 1 to state 0 (where state 1 represents the highest energy state)		Pass
	In certain applications, such as high-voltage switchgear, this principle cannot be followed, in which case other measures should be applied to achieve the same level of confidence for the stopping or slowing down.		N/A
	When, in order for the operator to maintain permanent control of deceleration, this principle is not observed (for example, a hydraulic braking device of a self-propelled mobile machine), the machine shall be equipped with a means of slowing and		Pass

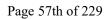


Page 55th of 229

	1 age 33th 01 227	WID-1C1-230726	17210
	stopping in case of failure of the main braking system.		
6.2.11.	Restart after power interruption		
	If a hazard could be generated, the spontaneous restart of a machine when it is re-energized after power interruption shall be prevented (for example, by use of a self-maintained relay, contactor or valve).		Pass
6.2.11.	Interruption of power supply		
	Machinery shall be designed to prevent hazardous situations resulting from interruption or excessive fluctuation of the power supply. At least the following requirements shall be met:	The hazardous situations resulting from interruption or excessive fluctuation of the power supply has been prevented.	Pass
	- the stopping function of the machinery shall remain;		Pass
	- all devices whose permanent operation is required for safety shall operate in an effective way to maintain safety (for example, locking, clamping devices, cooling or heating devices, power-assisted steering of self-propelled mobile machinery);		Pass
	- parts of machinery or workpieces and/or loads held by machinery which are liable to move as a result of potential energy shall be retained for the time necessary to allow them to be safely lowered.		Pass
6.2.11. 6	Use of automatic monitoring		
	Automatic monitoring is intended to ensure that a safety function or functions implemented by a protective measure do not fail to be performed if the ability of a component or an element to perform its function is diminished, or if the process conditions are changed such that hazards are generated.	Appropriate automatic monitoring has been used.	Pass
	Automatic monitoring either detects a fault immediately or carries out periodic checks so that a fault is detected before the next demand upon the safety function. In either case, the protective measure can be initiated immediately or delayed until a specific event occurs (for example, the	Appropriate automatic monitoring has been used.	Pass
	beginning of the machine cycle).		
	The protective measure may be, for example, - the stopping of the hazardous process,		Pass
	and stopping of the hazardous process,		1 400

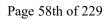


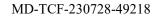
	- preventing the restart of this process after the first stop following the failure,	Pass
	- the triggering of an alarm.	Pass
6.2.11.	Safety functions implemented by programmable electronic control systems	-
6.2.11. 7.1	General	-
	A control system that includes programmable electronic equipment (for example, programmable controllers) can, where appropriate, be used to implement safety functions at machinery. Where a programmable electronic control system is used, it is necessary to consider its performance requirements in relation to the requirements for the safety functions. The design of the programmable electronic control system shall be such that the probability of random hardware failures and the likelihood of systematic failures that can adversely affect the performance of the safety-related control function(s) is sufficiently low. Where a programmable electronic control system performs a monitoring function, the system behaviour on detection of a fault shall be considered (see also the IEC 61508 series for further guidance).	N/A
	The programmable electronic control system should be installed and validated to ensure that the specified performance [for example, safety integrity level (SIL) in IEC 61508] for each safety function has been achieved. Validation comprises testing and analysis (for example, static, dynamic or failure analysis) to show that all parts interact correctly to perform the safety function and that unintended functions do not occur.	N/A
6.2.11. 7.2	Hardware aspects	
	The hardware (including, for example, sensors, actuators and logic solvers) shall be selected, and/or designed and installed, to meet both the functional and performance requirements of the safety function(s) to be performed, in particular, by means of - architectural constraints (the configuration of the system, its ability to tolerate faults, its behaviour on detection of a fault, etc.), - selection, and/or design, of equipment and devices with an appropriate probability of dangerous random hardware failure, and - the incorporation of measures and	N/A



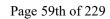


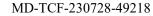
	Page 57th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-2	19210
	techniques within the hardware so as to avoid systematic failures and control systematic faults.		
6.2.11. 7.3	Software aspects		
	The software, including internal operating software (or system software) and application software, shall be designed so as to satisfy the performance specification for the safety functions (see also IEC 61508-3). Application software should not be		N/A
	reprogrammable by the user. This may be achieved by use of embedded software in a non-reprogrammable memory [for example, micro-controller, application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC)].		
	When the application requires reprogramming by the user, the access to the software dealing with safety functions should be restricted (for example, by locks or passwords for the authorized persons).		
6.2.11. 8	Principles relating to manual control		
	a) Manual control devices shall be designed and located according to the relevant ergonomic principles given in 6.2.8, item f).	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	b) A stop control device shall be placed near each start control device. Where the start/stop function is performed by means of a hold-to-run control, a separate stop control device shall be provided when a risk can result from the hold-to-run control device failing to deliver a stop command when released.	A stop control device has been placed near each start control device.	Pass
	c) Manual controls shall be located out of reach of the danger zones (see IEC 61310-3), except for certain controls where, of necessity, they are located within a danger zone, such as emergency stop or teach pendant.	Manual controls have been located out of reach of the danger zones.	Pass
	d) Whenever possible, control devices and control positions shall be located so that the operator is able to observe the working area or hazard zone.		Pass
	e) If it is possible to start the same hazardous element by means of several controls, the control circuit shall be so arranged that only one control is effective at a given time. This applies especially to machines which can be manually controlled by means	Not applicable.	N/A





	8		.,
	of, among others, a portable control unit (such as a teach pendant), with which the operator can enter danger zones.		
	f) Control actuators shall be designed or guarded so that their effect, where a risk is involved, cannot occur without intentional operation (see ISO 9355-1, ISO 9355-3 and ISO 447).		Pass
	g) For machine functions whose safe operation depends on permanent, direct control by the operator, measures shall be implemented to ensure the presence of the operator at the control position (for example, by the design and location of control devices).		Pass
	h) For cableless control, an automatic stop shall be performed when correct control signals are not received, including loss of communication (see IEC 60204-1).	Not applicable.	N/A
6.2.11.	Control mode for setting, teaching, process changeover, fault-finding, cleaning or maintenance		
	Where, for setting, teaching, process changeover, fault-finding, cleaning or maintenance of machinery, a guard has to be displaced or removed and/or a protective device has to be disabled, and where it is necessary for the purpose of these operations for the machinery or part of the machinery to be put into operation, the safety of the operator shall be achieved using a specific control mode which simultaneously	Not applicable.	N/A
	a) disables all other control modes,	Not applicable.	N/A
	b) permits operation of the hazardous elements only by continuous actuation of an enabling device, a two-hand control device or a hold-to-run control device,	Not applicable.	N/A
	c) permits operation of the hazardous elements only in reduced risk conditions (for example, reduced speed, reduced power/force, step-by-step, for example, with a limited movement control device),	Not applicable.	N/A
	d) prevents any operation of hazardous functions by voluntary or involuntary action on the machine's sensors.	Not applicable.	N/A
6.2.11. 10	Selection of control and operating modes		
	If machinery has been designed and built to allow for its use in several control or operating modes requiring different protective measures and/or work procedures (for	This requirement is complied with.	Pass







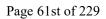
	1 age 37th 01 227	WID-1C1-230726	17210
	example, to allow for adjustment, setting, maintenance, inspection), it shall be fitted with a mode selector which can be locked in each position. Each position of the selector shall be clearly identifiable and shall exclusively allow one control or operating mode.		
	The selector may be replaced by another selection means which restricts the use of certain functions of the machinery to certain categories of operators (for example, access codes for certain numerically controlled functions).	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
6.2.11. 11	Applying measures to achieve electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)		
	For guidance on electromagnetic compatibility, see IEC 60204-1 and IEC 61000-6.	С	N/A
6.2.11. 12	Provision of diagnostic systems to aid fault-finding		
	Diagnostic systems to aid fault-finding should be included in the control system so that there is no need to disable any protective measure.		Pass
6.2.12	Minimizing probability of failure of safety functions		
6.2.12. 1	General		
	Safety of machinery is not only dependent on the reliability of the control systems but also on the reliability of all parts of the machine. The continued operation of the safety functions is essential for the safe use of the machine. This can be achieved by the measures given in 6.2.12.2 to 6.2.12.4.		Pass
6.2.12.	Use of reliable components		
	Reliable components" means components which are capable of withstanding all disturbances and stresses associated with the usage of the equipment in the conditions of intended use (including the environmental conditions), for the period of time or the number of operations fixed for the use, with a low probability of failures generating a hazardous malfunctioning of the machine. Components shall be selected taking into account all factors mentioned above (see also 6.2.13).	Reliable components have been used.	Pass
6.2.12.	Use of "oriented failure mode" components		

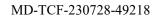




MD-TCF-230728-49218

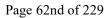
N H	Page 60th of 229	MD-TCF-230/28-	49218
(2.12	"Oriented failure mode" components or systems are those in which the predominant failure mode is known in advance and which can be used so that the effect of such a failure on the machine function can be predicted.		N/A
6.2.12.	Duplication (or redundancy) of components or subsystems		
	In the design of safety-related parts of the machine, duplication (or redundancy) of components may be used so that, if one component fails, another component or components continue to perform the respective function(s), thereby ensuring that the safety function remains available.	Not applicable.	N/A
	In order to allow the proper action to be initiated, component failure shall be detected by automatic monitoring (see 6.2.11.6) or in some circumstances by regular inspection, provided that the inspection interval is shorter than the expected lifetime of the components.	Not applicable.	N/A
	Diversity of design and/or technology can be used to avoid common cause failures (for example, from electromagnetic disturbance) or common mode failures.	Not applicable.	N/A
6.2.13	Limiting exposure to hazards through reliability of equipment		
	Increased reliability of all component parts of machinery reduces the frequency of incidents requiring intervention, thereby reducing exposure to hazards.	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	This applies to power systems (operative part, see Annex A) as well as to control systems, and to safety functions as well as to other functions of machinery.	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	Safety-related components (for example, certain sensors) of known reliability shall be used.	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
	The elements of guards and of protective devices shall be especially reliable, as their failure can expose persons to hazards, and also because poor reliability would encourage attempts to defeat them.	This requirement is complied with.	Pass
6.2.14	Limiting exposure to hazards through mechanization or automation of loading (feeding)/ unloading (removal) operations		
	Mechanization and automation of machine loading/unloading operations and, more generally, of handling operations — of workpieces, materials or substances — limits the risk generated by these operations by	This requirement is complied with.	Pass

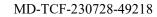




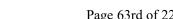


	reducing the exposure of persons to hazards at the operating points.		
	Automation can be achieved by, for example, robots, handling devices, transfer mechanisms and air-blast equipment. Mechanization can be achieved by, for example, feeding slides, push-rods and hand-operated indexing tables.	This requirement has been complied with by design.	Pass
	While automatic feeding and removal devices have much to offer in preventing accidents to machine operators, they can create danger when any faults are being corrected. Care shall be taken to ensure that the use of these devices does not introduce further hazards, such as trapping or crushing, between the devices and parts of the machine or workpieces/materials being processed. Suitable safeguards (see 6.3) shall be provided if this cannot be ensured.	This requirement has been complied with by design.	Pass
	Automatic feeding and removal devices with their own control systems and the control system of the associated machine shall be interconnected after thorough study of how all safety functions are performed in all the control and operation modes of the entire equipment.	This requirement has been complied with by design.	Pass
6.2.15	Limiting exposure to hazards through location of setting and maintenance points outside danger zones		
	The need for access to danger zones shall be minimized by locating maintenance, lubrication and setting points outside these zones.		Pass
6.3	Safeguarding and complementary protective measures		
6.3.1	General		
	Guards and protective devices shall be used to protect persons whenever an inherently safe design measure does not reasonably make it possible either to remove hazards or to sufficiently reduce risks. Complementary protective measures involving additional equipment (for example, emergency stop equipment) may have to be implemented. NOTE The different kinds of guards and protective devices are defined in 3.27 and 3.28.		Pass
6.3.2	Selection and implementation of guards and protective devices		
6.3.2.1	General		

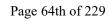




6 -		
This subclause gives guidelines for the selection and the implementation of guards and protective devices the primary purpose of which is to protect persons against hazards generated by moving parts, according to the nature of those parts (see Figure 4) and to the need for access to the danger zone(s). The exact choice of a safeguard for a		Pass
particular machine shall be made on the basis of the risk assessment for that machine.		
In selecting an appropriate safeguard for a particular type of machinery or hazard zone, it shall be borne in mind that a fixed guard is simple and shall be used where the access of an operator into a danger zone is not required during the normal operation (operation without malfunction) of the machinery.		Pass
As the need for frequency of access increases, this inevitably leads to the fixed guard not being replaced. This requires the use of an alternative protective measure (movable interlocking guard, sensitive protective equipment).	Movable interlocking guard is used.	Pass
A combination of safeguards can sometimes be required. For example, where, in conjunction with a fixed guard, a mechanical loading (feeding) device is used to feed a workpiece into a machine, thereby removing the need for access to the primary hazard zone, a trip device can be required to protect against the secondary drawing-in or shearing hazard between the mechanical loading (feeding) device, when reachable, and the fixed guard.		N/A
Consideration shall be given to the enclosure of control positions or intervention zones to provide combined protection against several hazards including	This requirement has been taken in to consideration.	Pass
a) hazards from falling or ejected objects, using, for example, protection in the form of a falling object protection structure (FOPS),	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
b) emission hazards (protection against noise, vibration, radiation, substances hazardous to health, etc.),	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
c) hazards due to the environment (protection against heat, cold, foul weather, etc.),	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
d) hazards due to tipping over or rolling over of machinery, using, for example, protection in the form of roll-over or tip-over protection	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass

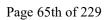


	Page 63rd of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	19218
	structures (ROPS and TOPS).		
	The design of enclosed work stations, such as cabs and cabins, shall take into account ergonomic principles concerning visibility, lighting, atmospheric conditions, access, posture.	Ergonomic principles have been taken into account during design.	Pass
6.3.2.2	Where access to the hazard zone is not required during normal operation		
	Where access to the hazard zone is not required during normal operation of the machinery, safeguards should be selected from the following:		
	a) fixed guards (see also ISO 14120);	Fixed guards are provided.	Pass
	b) interlocking guards with or without guard locking (see also 6.3.3.2.3, ISO 14119 and ISO 14120);	Not applicable.	N/A
	c) self-closing guards (see ISO 14120:2002, 3.3.2);	Not applicable.	N/A
	d) sensitive protective equipment, such as electrosensitive protective equipment (see IEC 61496) or pressure-sensitive protective devices (see ISO 13856).	Not applicable.	N/A
6.3.2.3	Where access to the hazard zone is required during normal operation		
	Where access to the hazard zone is required during normal operation of the machinery, safeguards should be selected from the following:		
	a) interlocking guards with or without guard locking (see also ISO 14119, ISO 14120 and 6.3.3.2.3 of this document); b) sensitive protective equipment, such as electrosensitive protective equipment (see	Not applicable.	N/A
	IEC 61496); c) adjustable guards; d) self-closing guards (see ISO 14120:2002, 3.3.2); e) two-hand control devices (see ISO 13851); f) interlocking guards with a start function (control guard) (see 6.3.3.2.5).		
6.3.2.4	Where access to the hazard zone is required for machine setting, teaching, process changeover, fault-finding, cleaning or maintenance		
	As far as possible, machines shall be designed so that the safeguards provided for the protection of the production operator also ensure the protection of personnel carrying out setting, teaching, process	Not applicable.	N/A





6.3.2.5 6.3.2.5.	changeover, fault-finding, cleaning or maintenance, without hindering them in the performance of their task. Such tasks shall be identified and considered in the risk assessment as parts of the use of the machine (see 5.2). Selection and implementation of sensitive		
	Selection and implementation of sensitive		
6.3.2.5.	protective equipment1)		
1	Selection		
	Due to the great diversity of the technologies on which their detection function is based, all types of sensitive protective equipment are far from being equally suitable for safety applications. The following provisions are intended to provide the designer with criteria for selecting, for each application, the most suitable device(s).	Not applicable.	N/A
	Types of sensitive protective equipment include - light curtains, - scanning devices, for example, laser scanners, - pressure-sensitive mats, and - trip bars, trip wires.	Not applicable.	N/A
	Sensitive protective equipment can be used - for tripping purposes, - for presence sensing, - for both tripping and presence sensing, or - to re-initiate machine operation — a practice subject to stringent conditions.	Not applicable.	N/A
	The following characteristics of the machinery, among others, can preclude the sole use of sensitive protective equipment: - tendency for the machinery to eject materials or component parts; - necessity to guard against emissions (noise, radiation, dust, etc.); - erratic or excessive machine stopping time; - inability of a machine to stop part-way through a cycle.	Not applicable.	N/A
6.3.2.5.	Implementation		
	Consideration should be given to a) the size, characteristics and positioning of the detection zone (see ISO 13855, which deals with the positioning of some types of sensitive	Not applicable.	N/A





	Page 65th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-4	19210
	protective equipment), b) the reaction of the device to fault conditions (see IEC 61496 for electrosensitive protective equipment), c) the possibility of circumvention, and d) detection capability and its variation over the course of time (as a result, for example, of its susceptibility to different environmental conditions such as the presence of reflecting surfaces, other artificial light sources and sunlight or impurities in the air).		
	Sensitive protective equipment shall be integrated in the operative part and associated with the control system of the machine so that - a command is given as soon as a person or part of a person is detected, - the withdrawal of the person or part of a person detected does not, by itself, restart the hazardous machine function(s), and therefore the command given by the sensitive protective equipment is maintained by the control system until a new command is given, - restarting the hazardous machine function(s) results from the voluntary actuation by the operator of a control device placed outside the hazard zone, where this zone can be observed by the operator, - the machine cannot operate during interruption of the detection function of the sensitive protective equipment, except during muting phases, and - the position and the shape of the detection field prevents, possibly together with fixed guards, a person or part of a person from entering or being present in the hazard zone without being detected.	Not applicable.	N/A
6.3.2.5.	Additional requirements for sensitive protective equipment when used for cycle initiation		
	In this exceptional application, the starting of the machine cycle is initiated by the withdrawal of a person or of the detected part of a person from the sensing field of the sensitive protective equipment, without any additional start command, hence deviating from the general requirement given in the second point of the dashed list in 6.3.2.5.2, above. After switching on the power supply, or when the machine has been stopped by the tripping function of the sensitive protective equipment, the machine cycle shall	Not applicable.	N/A

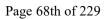


Page 66th of 229

	Page 66th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-	49210
	be initiated only by voluntary actuation of a start control.		
	Cycle initiation by sensitive protective equipment shall be subject to the following conditions:	Not applicable.	N/A
	a) only active optoelectronic protective devices (AOPDs) complying with IEC 61496 series shall be used;	Not applicable.	N/A
	b) the requirements for an AOPD used as a tripping and presence-sensing device (see IEC 61496) are satisfied — in particular, location, minimum distance (see ISO 13855), detection capability, reliability and monitoring of control and braking systems;	Not applicable.	N/A
	c) the cycle time of the machine is short and the facility to re-initiate the machine upon clearing of the sensing field is limited to a period commensurate with a single normal cycle;	Not applicable.	N/A
	d) entering the sensing field of the AOPD(s) or opening interlocking guards is the only way to enter the hazard zone;	Not applicable.	N/A
	e) if there is more than one AOPD safeguarding the machine, only one of the AOPDs is capable of cycle re-initiation;	Not applicable.	N/A
	f) with regard to the higher risk resulting from automatic cycle initiation, the AOPD and the associated control system comply with a higher safety-related performance than under normal conditions.	Not applicable.	N/A
6.3.2.6	Protective measures for stability		
	If stability cannot be achieved by inherently safe design measures such as weight distribution (see 6.2.6), it shall be maintained by the use of protective measures such as		
	- anchorage bolts,		Pass
	- locking devices,		Pass
	- movement limiters or mechanical stops,		Pass
	- acceleration or deceleration limiters,		N/A
	- load limiters,		Pass
	- alarms warning of the approach to stability or tipping limits.		N/A
6.3.2.7	Other protective devices		
	When a machine requires continuous control by the operator (for example, mobile machines, cranes) and an error of the operator can generate a hazardous situation, this machine shall be equipped with the necessary devices to enable the operation to remain	Not applicable.	N/A

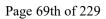


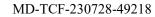
3	Page 67th of 229	MD-TCF-230728	-49218
	within specified limits, in particular		
	- when the operator has insufficient visibility of the hazard zone,	Not applicable.	N/A
	- when the operator lacks knowledge of the actual value of a safety-related parameter (distance, speed, mass, angle, etc.),	Not applicable.	N/A
	- when hazards can result from operations other than those controlled by the operator.	Not applicable.	N/A
	The necessary devices include		
	a) devices for limiting parameters of movement (distance, angle, velocity, acceleration),	Not applicable.	N/A
	b) overloading and moment limiting devices,		
	c) devices to prevent collisions or interference with other machines,		
	d) devices for preventing hazards to pedestrian operators of mobile machinery or other pedestrians,		
	e) torque limiting devices, and breakage points to prevent excessive stress of components and assemblies,		
	f) devices for limiting pressure or temperature,		
	g) devices for monitoring emissions, h) devices to prevent operation in the absence		
	of the operator at the control position, i) devices to prevent lifting operations unless stabilizers are in place,		
	j) devices to limit inclination of the machine on a slope, and		
	k) devices to ensure that components are in a safe position before travelling.		
	Automatic protective measures triggered by such devices that take operation of the machinery out of the control of the operator (for example, automatic stop of hazardous movement) should be preceded or	Not applicable.	N/A
	accompanied by a warning signal to enable the operator to take appropriate action (see 6.4.3).		
6.3.3	Requirements for design of guards and protective devices		
6.3.3.1	General requirements		
	Guards and protective devices shall be designed to be suitable for the intended use, taking into account mechanical and other hazards involved. Guards and protective devices shall be compatible with the working environment of the machine and designed so	Guards and protective devices have been appropriately designed.	Pass
	that they cannot be easily defeated. They shall		





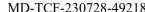
	Page ostn of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-2	7210
	provide the minimum possible interference with activities during operation and other phases of machine life, in order to reduce any incentive to defeat them.		
	Guards and protective devices shall		
	a) be of robust construction,	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	b) not give rise to any additional hazard,	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	c) not be easy to bypass or render non-operational,	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	d) be located at an adequate distance from the danger zone (see ISO 13855 and ISO 13857),	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	e) cause minimum obstruction to the view of the production process,	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	f) enable essential work to be carried out for the installation and/or replacement of tools and for maintenance by allowing access only to the area where the work has to be carried out — if possible, without the guard having to be removed or protective device having to be disabled.	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
6.3.3.2	Requirements for guards		
6.3.3.2.	Functions of guards		
	The functions that guards can achieve are		
	- prevention of access to the space enclosed by the guard, and/or - containment/capture of materials, workpieces, chips, liquids which can be ejected or dropped by the machine, and reduction of emissions (noise, radiation, hazardous substances such as dust, fumes, gases) that can be generated by the machine.	These functions are achieved by fixed guards	Pass
	Additionally, they could need to have particular properties relating to electricity, temperature, fire, explosion, vibration, visibility (see ISO 14120) and operator position ergonomics (for example, usability, operator's movements, postures, repetitive	These functions are achieved by fixed guards	Pass





	movements).		
6.3.3.2.	Requirements for fixed guards		
	Fixed guards shall be securely held in place either - permanently (for example by welding), or - by means of fasteners (screws, nuts) making removal/opening impossible without using tools; they should not remain closed without their fasteners (see ISO 14120).	All the fixed guards are securely held in place by appropriate fasteners.	Pass
6.3.3.2.	Requirements for movable guards		
	Movable guards which provide protection against hazards generated by moving transmission parts shall a) as far as possible when open remain fixed to the machinery or other structure (generally by means of hinges or guides), and b) be interlocking (with guard locking when necessary) (see ISO 14119). See Figure 4. Movable guards against hazards generated by non-transmission moving parts shall be designed and associated with the machine control system so that - moving parts cannot start up while they are within the operator's reach and the operator cannot reach moving parts once they have started up, with this able to be achieved by interlocking guards, with guard locking when necessary, - they can be adjusted only by an intentional action, such as the use of a tool or a key, and - the absence or failure of one of their components either prevents starting of the moving parts or stops them, with this able to be achieved by automatic monitoring (see 6.2.11.6).	Not applicable.	N/A
6.3.3.2.	Requirements for adjustable guards		
	Adjustable guards may only be used where the hazard zone cannot for operational reasons be completely enclosed. Manually adjustable guards shall be - designed so that the adjustment remains fixed during a given operation, and - readily adjustable without the use of tools.	Not applicable.	N/A
6.3.3.2.	Requirements for interlocking guards with a start function (control guards)		
	An interlocking guard with a start function	Not applicable.	N/A







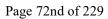
	Page 70th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	19218
	may only be used provided that		
	a) all requirements for interlocking guards are satisfied (see ISO 14119),		
	b) the cycle time of the machine is short,		
	c) the maximum opening time of the guard is		
	preset to a low value (for example, equal to the cycle time) and, when this time is exceeded, the hazardous function(s) cannot be initiated by the closing of the interlocking		
	guard with a start function and resetting is necessary before restarting the machine,		
	d) the dimensions or shape of the machine do not allow a person, or part of a person, to stay in the hazard zone or between the hazard zone and the guard while the guard is closed (see ISO 14120),		
	e) all other guards, whether fixed (removable type) or movable, are interlocking guards, f) the interlocking device associated with the interlocking guard with a start function is designed such that — for example, by duplication of position detectors and use of automatic monitoring (see 6.2.11.6) — its failure cannot lead to an unintended/unexpected start-up, and g) the guard is securely held open (for example, by a spring or counterweight) such that it cannot initiate a start while falling by		
6.3.3.2.	its own weight. Hazards from guards		
	Care shall be taken to prevent hazards which could be generated by - the guard construction (sharp edges or corners, material, noise emission, etc.), - the movements of the guards (shearing or crushing zones generated by power-operated guards and by heavy guards which are liable to fall).	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
6.3.3.3	Technical characteristics of protective devices		
	Protective devices shall be selected or designed and connected to the control system such that correct implementation of their safety function(s) is ensured.	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
	Protective devices shall be selected on the basis of their having met the appropriate product standard (for example, IEC 61496 for active optoelectronic protective devices) or shall be designed according to one or several of the principles formulated in ISO 13849-1	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass

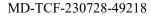
	Page 71st of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	19218
	or IEC 62061.		
	Protective devices shall be installed and connected to the control system so that they cannot be easily defeated.	This requirement has been taken into account during design.	Pass
6.3.3.4	Provisions for alternative types of safeguards		
	Provisions should be made to facilitate the fitting of alternative types of safeguards on machinery where it is known that it will be necessary to change the safeguards because of the range of work to be carried out.	Not applicable.	N/A
6.3.4	Safeguarding to reduce emissions		
6.3.4.1	General		
	If the measures for the reduction of emissions at source specified in 6.2.2.2 are not adequate, the machine shall be provided with additional protective measures (see 6.3.4.2 to 6.3.4.5).		Pass
6.3.4.2	Noise		
	Additional protective measures against noise include - enclosures (see ISO 15667), - screens fitted to the machine, and - silencers (see ISO 14163).	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
6.3.4.3	Vibration		
6.3.4.3	Additional protective measures against vibration include	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
	 vibration isolators, such as damping devices placed between the source and the exposed person, resilient mounting, and suspended seats. 		
	For measures for vibration isolation of stationary industrial machinery see EN 1299.		
6.3.4.4	Hazardous substances		
	Additional protective measures against hazardous substances include - encapsulation of the machine (enclosure with negative pressure), - local exhaust ventilation with filtration, - wetting with liquids, and — special ventilation in the area of the machine (air curtains, cabins for operators).	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
6215	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
6.3.4.5	Radiation Additional protective measures against radiation include - use of filtering and absorption, and	No such hazards exist in this machine.	Pass
	- use of attenuating screens or guards.		
c 2 =		1	1



6.3.5

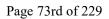
Complementary protective measures

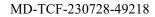






	Page /2nd of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-	49210
6.3.5.1	General		
	Protective measures which are neither inherently safe design measures, nor safeguarding (implementation of guards and/or protective devices), nor information for use, could have to be implemented as required by the intended use and the reasonably foreseeable misuse of the machine. Such measures include, but are not limited to, those dealt with in 6.3.5.2 to 6.3.5.6.		Pass
6.3.5.2	Components and elements to achieve emergency stop function		
	If, following a risk assessment, a machine needs to be fitted with components and elements to achieve an emergency stop function for enabling actual or impending emergency situations to be averted, the following requirements apply:		
	- the actuators shall be clearly identifiable, clearly visible and readily accessible;	The actuators can be clearly identifiable, clearly visible and readily accessible	Pass
	- the hazardous process shall be stopped as quickly as possible without creating additional hazards, but if this is not possible or the risk cannot be reduced, it should be questioned whether implementation of an emergency stop function is the best solution;	The hazardous process can be stopped as quickly as possible without creating additional hazards	Pass
	- the emergency stop control shall trigger or permit the triggering of certain safeguard movements where necessary.	No this situation exists.	Pass
	Once active operation of the emergency stop device has ceased following an emergency stop command, the effect of this command shall be sustained until it is reset.	Reset is necessary before re-start.	Pass
	This reset shall be possible only at the location where the emergency stop command has been initiated. The reset of the device shall not restart the machinery, but shall only permit restarting.	This requirement is complyied with by appropriate design of the emergency stop.	
	More details for the design and selection of electrical components and elements to achieve the emergency stop function are provided in IEC 60204.	Please see the related clauses.	Pass
6.3.5.3	Measures for the escape and rescue of trapped persons		
	Measures for the escape and rescue of trapped persons may consist, among others, of	Not applicable.	N/A
	persons may consist, among others, or		





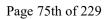


	1 age 7514 01 227	WID-1C1-230720-	7210
	- escape routes and shelters in installations generating operator-trapping hazards,		
	- arrangements for moving some elements by hand, after an emergency stop,		
	- arrangements for reversing the movement of some elements,		
	- anchorage points for descender devices,		
	- means of communication to enable trapped		
	operators to call for help.		
6.3.5.4	Measures for isolation and energy dissipation		
	Machines shall be equipped with the technical means to achieve isolation from power supply(ies) and dissipation of stored energy by means of the following actions:		
	a) isolating (disconnecting, separating) the machine (or defined parts of the machine) from all power supplies;	A main switch with lock is provided	Pass
	b) locking (or otherwise securing) all the isolating units in the isolating position;	Please see the report for EN60204	Pass
	c) dissipating or, if this is not possible or practicable, restraining (containing) any stored energy which can give rise to a hazard;	Please see the report for EN60204	Pass
	d) verifying, by means of safe working procedures, that the actions taken according to a), b) and c) above have produced the desired effect.	Please see the report for EN60204	Pass
6.3.5.5	Provisions for easy and safe handling of machines and their heavy component parts		
	Machines and their component parts which cannot be moved or transported by hand shall be provided or be capable of being provided with suitable attachment devices for transport by means of lifting gear.	Appropriate attachments are provided.	Pass
	These attachments may be, among others,		
	- standardized lifting appliances with slings, hooks, eyebolts, or tapped holes for appliance fixing,	Such devices are used	Pass
	- appliances for automatic grabbing with a lifting hook when attachment is not possible from the ground,		N/A
	- fork locating devices for machines to be transported by a lift truck,	Such devices are used	Pass
	- lifting and stowing gear and appliances integrated into the machine.		N/A
	Parts of machinery which can be removed		Pass
	manually in operation shall be provided with means for their safe removal and replacement.		
6.3.5.6			



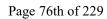


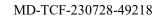
	Page 74th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	19218
	operation and all routine tasks relating to setting and/or maintenance to be carried out as far as possible by a person remaining at ground level.		
	Where this is not possible, machines shall have built-in platforms, stairs or other facilities to provide safe access for those tasks; however, care should be taken to ensure that such platforms or stairs do not give access to danger zones of machinery. The walking areas shall be made from materials which remain as slip resistant as practicable under working conditions and, depending on the height from the ground, shall be provided with suitable guard-rails (see ISO 14122-3). In large automated installations, particular attention shall be given to safe means of access, such as walkways, conveyor bridges or crossover points. Means of access to parts of machinery located at height shall be provided with collective means of protection against falls (for example, guard-rails for stairways, stepladders and platforms and/or safety cages for ladders). As necessary, anchorage points for personal protective equipment against falls from height shall also be provided (for example, in carriers of machinery for lifting persons or with elevating control stations). Openings shall, whenever possible, open towards a safe position. They shall be designed to prevent hazards due to unintended opening. The necessary aids for access shall be provided (steps, handholds, etc.). Control devices shall be designed and located to prevent their being used as aids for access. When machinery for lifting goods and/or persons includes landings at fixed levels, these shall be equipped with interlocking guards for preventing falls when the platform is not present at a level. Movement of the lifting platform shall be prevented while the	Not applicable.	N/A
6.4	guards are open. Information for use		
6.4.1	General requirements		
	1	All the information is	Dagg
6.4.1.1	Drafting information for use is an integral part of the design of a machine (see Figure 2). Information for use consists of communication links, such as texts, words,	All the information is stated in the appropriate place.	Pass





	1 age /Jui 01 22)	WID-1C1-230720-	17210
	signs, signals, symbols or diagrams, used separately or in combination to convey information to the user. Information for use is intended for professional and/or non-professional users.		
6.4.1.2	Information shall be provided to the user about the intended use of the machine, taking into account, notably, all its operating modes.		
	The information shall contain all directions required to ensure safe and correct use of the machine. With this in view, it shall inform and warn the user about residual risk.	All the information is stated in the instruction manual.	Pass
	The information shall indicate, as appropriate,		
	 the need for training, the need for personal protective equipment, and the possible need for additional guards or protective devices (see Figure 2, Footnote d). 	All the information is stated in the instruction manual.	Pass
	It shall not exclude uses of the machine that can reasonably be expected from its designation and description and shall also warn about the risk which would result from using the machine in other ways than the ones described in the information, especially considering its reasonably foreseeable misuse.	All the information is stated in the appropriate place.	Pass
6.4.1.3	Information for use shall cover, separately or in combination, transport, assembly and installation, commissioning, use of the machine (setting, teaching/programming or process changeover, operation, cleaning, fault-finding and maintenance) and, if necessary, dismantling, disabling and scrapping.	All the information is stated in the instruction manual.	Pass
6.4.2	Location and nature of information for use		
	Depending on the risk, the time when the information is needed by the user and the machine design, it shall be decided whether the information — or parts thereof — are to be given		Pass
	a) in/on the machine itself (see 6.4.3 and 6.4.4),	Adequate information is stated in the instruction manual.	Pass
	b) in accompanying documents (in particular instruction handbook, see 6.4.5),	Adequate information is stated in the instruction manual.	Pass
	c) on the packaging,	Adequate information is stated in the instruction	Pass





	6		
		manual.	
	d) by other means such as signals and warnings outside the machine.	Adequate information is stated in the instruction manual.	Pass
	Standardized phrases shall be considered where important messages such as warnings are given (see also IEC 62079).		Pass
6.4.3	Signals and warning devices		
	Visual signals, such as flashing lights and audible signals such as sirens may be used to warn of an impending hazardous event such as machine start-up or overspeed. Such signals may also be used to warn the operator before the triggering of automatic protective measures (see 6.3.2.7).	Signals and warning devices are provided.	Pass
	It is essential that these signals		
	 a) be emitted before the occurrence of the hazardous event, b) be unambiguous, c) be clearly perceived and differentiated from all other signals used, and d) be clearly recognized by the operator and other persons. 	This requirement is taken into account during design and selection of the warning devices.	Pass
	The warning devices shall be designed and located such that checking is easy. The information for use shall prescribe regular checking of warning devices.		Pass
	The attention of designers is drawn to the possibility of "sensorial saturation", which can result from too many visual and/or acoustic signals and which can also lead to defeating the warning devices.		Pass
6.4.4	Markings, signs (pictograms) and written warnings		
	Machinery shall bear all markings which are necessary		
	a) for its unambiguous identification, including at least		
	 the name and address of the manufacturer, the designation of series or type, and the serial number, if any, 	Adequate information is provided.	Pass
	b) in order to indicate its compliance with mandatory requirements, comprising		
	1) marking, and 2) written indications, such as the authorized representative of the manufacturer, designation of the machinery, year of construction, and intended	Adequate information is provided.	Pass

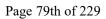


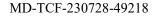
Page 77th of 229

Pass
Pass
Pass
_
Pass
Pass
Pass
Pass



Page 78th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-4	19218
and vibration requirements, 2) assembly and mounting conditions, 3) space needed for use and maintenance, 4) permissible environmental conditions (for example, temperature, moisture, vibration, electromagnetic radiation),	information is stated in the instruction handbook	
5) instructions for connecting the machine to power supply (particularly on protection against electrical overloading), 6) advice on waste removal/disposal, and 7) if necessary, recommendations related to protective measures which have to be implemented by the user — for example, additional safeguards (see Figure 2, Footnote d), safety distances, safety signs and signals;		
c) information relating to the machine itself, such as		
1) detailed description of the machine, its fittings, guards and/or protective devices, 2) the comprehensive range of applications for which the machine is intended, including prohibited usages, if any, taking into account variations of the original machine if appropriate, 3) diagrams (especially schematic representation of safety functions), 4) data on noise and vibration generated by the machine, and on radiation, gases, vapours and dust emitted by it, with reference to the measuring methods (including measurement uncertainties) used, 5) technical documentation of electrical equipment (see IEC 60204), and 6) documents attesting that the machine complies with mandatory requirements;	All the related information is stated in the instruction handbook	Pass
d) information relating to the use of the machine, such as that related to or describing		
1) intended use, 2) manual controls (actuators), 3) setting and adjustment, 4) modes and means for stopping (especially emergency stop), 5) risks which could not be eliminated by the protective measures implemented by the designer, 6) particular risks which can be generated by certain applications, by the use of certain fittings, and about specific safeguards necessary for such applications,	All the related information is stated in the instruction handbook	Pass





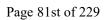


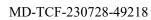
	Tage // in or 22/		
	7) reasonably foreseeable misuse and		
	prohibited applications, 8) fault identification and location, for repair		
	and for restarting after an intervention, and		
	9) personal protective equipment needed to be used and the training that is required;		
	e) information for maintenance, such as		
	1) the nature and frequency of inspections for	All the related	Pass
	safety functions,	information is stated in the instruction	
	2) specification of the spare parts to be used when these can affect the health and safety of operators,	handbook	
	3) instructions relating to maintenance		
	operations which require a definite technical knowledge or particular skills and hence need		
	to be carried out exclusively by skilled		
	persons (for example, maintenance staff, specialists),		
	4) instructions relating to maintenance actions		
	(replacement of parts, etc.) which do not		
	require specific skills and hence may be carried out by users (for example, operators),		
	and		
	5) drawings and diagrams enabling		
	maintenance personnel to carry out their task rationally (especially fault-finding tasks);		
	f) information relating to dismantling,	All the related	Pass
	disabling and scrapping;	information is stated	1 433
		in the instruction handbook	
	g) information for emergency situations, such	папцоок	
	as		
	1) the operating method to be followed in the	All the related	Pass
	event of accident or breakdown, 2) the type of fire-fighting equipment to be	information is stated in the instruction	
	used, and	handbook	
	3) a warning of possible emission or leakage		
	of hazardous substance(s) and, if possible, an indication of means for fighting their effects;		
	h) maintenance instructions provided for	All the related	Pass
	skilled persons [item e) 3) above] and	information is stated	
	maintenance instructions provided for unskilled persons [item e) 4) above], that need	in the instruction handbook	
	to appear clearly separated from each other.	nandoook	
6.4.5.2	Production of instruction handbook		
	The following applies to the production and presentation of the instruction handbook.		
	a) The type fount and size of print shall ensure	All the related	Pass
	the best possible legibility. Safety warnings and/or cautions should be emphasized by the	information is stated in the instruction	



Page 80th of 229 MD-TCF-230728-49218

	rage outil of 22)	WID-1C1-230/20-	17210
	use of colours, symbols and/or large print.	handbook	
	b) The information for use shall be given in the language(s) of the country in which the machine will be used for the first time and in the original version.		Pass
	If more than one language is to be used, each should be readily distinguished from another, and efforts should be made to keep the translated text and relevant illustration together		Pass
	NOTE In some countries the use of specific language(s) is covered by legal requirements		
	c) Whenever helpful to the understanding, text should be supported by illustrations. These illustrations should be supplemented with written details enabling, for example, manual controls (actuators) to be located and identified. They should not be separated from the accompanying text and should follow sequential operations.		Pass
	d) Consideration should be given to presenting information in tabular form where this will aid understanding. Tables should be adjacent to the relevant text.		Pass
	e) The use of colours should be considered, particularly in relation to components requiring quick identification.		Pass
	f) When information for use is lengthy, a table of contents and/or an index should be provided.		Pass
	g) Safety-relevant instructions which involve immediate action should be provided in a form readily available to the operator.		Pass
6.4.5.3	Drafting and editing information for use		
	The following applies to the drafting and editing of information for use.		Pass
	a) Relationship to model: the information shall clearly relate to the specific model of machine and, if necessary, other appropriate identification (for example, by serial number).	All the related information is stated in the instruction handbook	Pass
	b) Communication principles: when information for use is being prepared, the communication process "see – think – use" should be followed in order to achieve the maximum effect and should follow sequential operations. The questions, "How?" and "Why?" should be anticipated and the answers provided.		Pass
	c) Information for use shall be as simple and		Pass







	1 age 61st 61 22)	MID-1C1-230720-4	7210
	as brief as possible, and should be expressed in consistent terms and units with a clear explanation of unusual technical terms.		
	d) When it is foreseen that a machine will be put to non-professional use, the instructions should be written in a form that is readily understood by the non-professional user. If personal protective equipment is required for the safe use of the machine, clear advice should be given, for example, on the packaging as well as on the machine, so that this information is prominently displayed at the point of sale.		Pass
	e) Durability and availability of the documents: documents giving instructions for use should be produced in durable form (i.e. they should be able to survive frequent handling by the user). It can be useful to mark them "keep for future reference". Where information for use is kept in electronic form (CD, DVD, tape, hard disk, etc.), information on safety-related issues that need immediate action shall always be backed up with a hard copy that is readily available.		Pass
7	Documentation of risk assessment and risk reduction		Pass
	The documentation shall demonstrate the procedure that has been followed and the results that have been achieved. This includes, when relevant, documentation of		Pass
	a) the machinery for which the risk assessment has been made (for example, specifications, limits, intended use);	Please see the risk assessment report in detail.	Pass
	b) any relevant assumptions that have been made (loads, strengths, safety factors, etc.);		Pass
	c) the hazards and hazardous situations identified and the hazardous events considered in the risk assessment;		Pass
	d) the information on which risk assessment was based (see 5.2):		Pass
	1) the data used and the sources (accident histories, experience gained from risk reduction applied to similar machinery, etc.);		Pass
	2) the uncertainty associated with the data used and its impact on the risk assessment;		Pass
	e) the risk reduction objectives to be achieved by protective measures;		Pass
	f) the protective measures implemented to eliminate identified hazards or to reduce risk;		Pass



Page 82nd of 229

1 490 02114 01 229	1.12 101 200,20	.,,
g) residual risks associated with the machinery;		Pass
h) the result of the risk assessment (see Figure 1);		Pass
i) any forms completed during the risk assessment.		Pass
Standards or other specifications used to select protective measures referred to in f) above should be referenced.		Pass

EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict

4.2	Mechanical hazards	-
4.2.1	Moving parts	-



Page 83rd of 229		MD-TCF-230728-49218	
4.2.1.1	General		-
	Most food processing machines, whether intended		Р
	for commercial or industrial use, incorporate		
	mechanical mechanisms, which can cause		
	moderate or disabling injuries.		
	Typical mechanical hazards caused by moving		Р
	parts on food processing machines include:		
	a. crushing hazards – e.g. caused by tools or drive		Р
	mechanisms, gears and chains and sprockets;		
	b. shearing hazards – e.g. caused by tools or		Р
	transfer mechanisms, rotary valves, dividing		
	mechanisms;		
	c. cutting hazards – e.g. caused by cutting devices		Р
	during operation, machine intervention, cleaning		
	and handling, sheet metal edges that have not		
	been deburred;		
	d. entanglement hazards – e.g. caused by mixing		Р
	tools, rotating shafts;		
	e. drawing-in and trapping hazards – e.g. caused		Р
	by milling or gauging rollers, drive rollers on belt		
	conveyors;		
	f. impact hazards – e.g. caused by unsupported lids		Р
	or covers, small machines falling off work surfaces;		
	g. stabbing and puncture hazards – e.g. caused by		Р
	meat injectors;		
	h. friction and abrasion – e.g. caused by conveyor		Р
	belts, drive belts;		
	i. ejection of parts hazards – e.g. caused by		Р
	products in rotating bowls, break-up of high speed		
	rotating components.		
4.2.1.2	Risks arising from frequent operator		-
	intervention		
4.2.1.2.1	General		_
	On food processing machines, the risks from		Р
	moving parts are increased in comparison to similar		

EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	machinery used in other industries because of the		
	need for frequent operator intervention.		



Page 84th of 229

There is a need for frequent intervention into danger zones to remove blockages, to assist product flow (especially the last piece of a product run), to clean between different product runs and to gain access to the machine parts for a thorough clean to meet food hygiene requirements. 4.2.1.2.2 Openings in machines There is a risk from danger zones on food processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
product flow (especially the last piece of a product run), to clean between different product runs and to gain access to the machine parts for a thorough clean to meet food hygiene requirements. 4.2.1.2.2 Openings in machines There is a risk from danger zones on food processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
run), to clean between different product runs and to gain access to the machine parts for a thorough clean to meet food hygiene requirements. 4.2.1.2.2 Openings in machines There is a risk from danger zones on food processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
gain access to the machine parts for a thorough clean to meet food hygiene requirements. 4.2.1.2.2 Openings in machines There is a risk from danger zones on food processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
clean to meet food hygiene requirements. 4.2.1.2.2 Openings in machines There is a risk from danger zones on food processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
4.2.1.2.2 Openings in machines There is a risk from danger zones on food processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
There is a risk from danger zones on food processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
processing machines, when operators reach into infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
infeed, outfeed and inspection openings to load product, unload product, and assist product flow
product, unload product, and assist product flow
and the street of the street o
and to clean the machine.
4.2.1.2.3 Reaching over guards -
There is a risk from danger zones on food
processing machines, when operators stand on
parts of machines or mobile steps and reach over
guards to assist product flow or to clean the
machine while the machine is running.
4.2.2 Risks which may arise from hygienic -
design features
4.2.2.1 General -
Design features that make a food processing
machine easy to clean can expose operators to
hazards on the
machine if they are not correctly designed.
4.2.2.2 Quick release fixings -
Quick release fixings that can be undone without
the use of tools are frequently fitted to food
processing machines so that machines can be
dismantled quickly for cleaning.
A risk may arise if the removal of quick release
fittings allows access to danger zones.
4.2.2.3 Cleaning space under machines -
There is a risk from danger zones on food
processing machines, if operators kneel on the

EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test		Result	Verdict



	Page 85th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-492	218
	floor and reach under guards to clean the machine		
	or the floor under the machine when the machine is		
	in motion as shown in Figure 1.		
	This risk is increased if an open design structure		Р
	has been used to allow food to fall freely through		
	the machine's mechanisms onto the floor.		
			P
4.2.2.4	Spillage trays		-
	Food processing machines may be fitted with trays		Р
	to collect spillages of food from the machine. It is		
	good hygienic design practice for spillage trays to		
	be easily removable so that product can be emptied		
	frequently; however, when the trays are removed,		
	the operator may be exposed to danger zones on		
	the machine.		
4.2.3	Hazards caused by high pressure fluids		-
	Some food processing machines incorporate		Р
	pneumatic or hydraulic systems.		
	Pneumatic and hydraulic equipment presents		Р
	crushing, shearing, ejection of parts, explosion and		
	injection of fluids hazards.		
	Stored energy in pneumatic or hydraulic systems		Р
	may cause mechanisms to move unexpectedly		
	even when power supplies are disconnected.		
	In addition hydraulic oil and pneumatic lubricating		Р
	oil present a potential fire hazard and can		
	contaminate the food.		
	Some food processing machines use high-pressure		Р
	water to cut or dislodge food products.		
<u> </u>			



Page 86th of 229

Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	These high-pressure jets can cause cutting injuries.		Р
4.2.4	Stored energy		-
	Many food processing machines including retorts		Р
	and cookers contain stored energy.		
	This energy may be mechanical, hydraulic,		Р
	pneumatic, steam, over-pressure or vacuum.		
	Hazards occur if components containing the energy		Р
	fail or if the energy is released in an uncontrolled		
	way during loading, unloading, cleaning or		
	maintenance.		
4.2.5	Slip, trip and fall hazards resulting from the		-
	design of the machine		
4.2.5.1	Slip hazards		-
	The nature and the form of many foods, the oils and		Р
	fats used in food processing and the wet nature of		
	some processes makes slipping on spilled		
	substances a particular hazard in premises where		
	food is prepared.		
	Slipping hazards will occur if the design of the		Р
	machine permits materials to spill out, overflow or		
	otherwise escape from the machine. Run-off water		
	and detergents used for cleaning can also make		
	surfaces slippery.		
4.2.5.2	Trip hazards		-
	Trip hazards may arise on food processing		Р
	machines where there are pipes or cables trailing		
	on the floor or		
	assemblies positioned at low level.		
4.2.5.3	Hazard of falling from a height		-
	There is a risk of people falling from a height if it is		Р
	necessary to operate, clean or maintain a machine		
	above floor level.		
	The risk of falling is increased if the surfaces used		Р
	for standing or walking at a height are covered with		
	food products, oil, fats, water or detergents.		
4.2.6	Loss of stability		-
	If food processing machines become unstable and		Р



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	move unexpectedly or fall over they can cause		
	crushing and impact injuries. Circumstances in		
	which loss of stability can occur include the		
	following:		
	a) While the machine is in operation or being		P
	cleaned, for example:		_
	a. if someone rests a container full of product on		P
	the edge of the feed hopper;		
	b. if the machine is loaded with product unevenly;		Р
	c. if someone stands on the machine.		Р
	b) While the machine is being moved, for example:		Р
	a. if the manufacturer's lifting and moving		Р
	instructions are not followed;		
	b. on machines fitted with wheels if the machine is		P
	moved on a slope or uneven surface.		
4.3	Electrical Hazards		-
4.3.1	Electrical equipment		-
	Electrical equipment on the machine generates a		P
	potential electric shock and burn hazard.		
	In the presence of combustible materials there is a		P
	potential fire hazard.		_
	Electrical systems may act as an ignition source. In		Р
	the presence of flammable substances or products		
	that may create explosive atmospheres, this could		
	give rise to an explosion hazard.		
	If liquids, e. g. product spillage or cleaning		Р
	substances like water, come into contact with the		
	electrical conductors, there is a risk of electric		
422	shock.		
4.3.2	Electrostatic phenomena		- P
	Electrostatic discharges can be a source of ignition		,
	for flammable substances or explosive		
	atmospheres, e. g. flour dust.		
4.4	Thermal hazards		- P
	Many food processing machines incorporate heat		
	sources, e.g. electrical heating elements, gas		
	flames or steam.		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	On machines containing heat sources there is a		Р
	risk of burning from the heat source, steam, hot		
	surfaces or hot air.		
	Machines containing heat sources can create a hot		Р
	working environment that may have a health		
	damaging effect, e.g. heat exhaustion.		
	Some food processing machines incorporate		Р
	refrigerating systems.		
	On machines containing refrigerating systems		Р
	there is a risk of burning from cold surfaces,		
	refrigerants and cold products.		
	Machines containing refrigerating systems may		Р
	create a cold environment that can have health		
	damaging effects, e.g. hypothermia.		
	Thermal hazards from hot or cold surfaces may be		Р
	increased on food processing machines because		
	standard heat insulating materials may not be		
	compatible with the hygienic design requirements		
	for the machine.		
4.5	Noise		-
	Food processing machines may generate noise		Р
	which can result in hearing damage, in accidents		
	due to interference with speech communication and		
	interference with the perception of acoustic signals.		
4.6	Hazards generated by vibration		-
	Food processing machines that incorporate		Р
	vibratory feeders or other vibrating mechanisms		
	may cause vibration hazards if operators are		
	required to hold, sit on or stand on vibrating parts of		
	the machine for long periods.		
4.7	Hazards generated by radiation		-
	Some food processing machines incorporate		Р
	sources of radiation that may give rise to hazards,		
	for example:		
	a) low frequency, radio frequency and		Р
	micro-waves, e.g. for microwave cooking of foods,		
	which can cause burning and other health		
	damaging effects;		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	b) infra-red, visible light and ultra-violet light, e.g. for infrared drying or heating of foods which can cause burning or blindness;		Р
	c) X- and gamma rays, e.g. for inspection or irradiation of foods, which can cause burning, cancer and genetic mutation;		Р
	d) alpha- and beta-particles, electron or ion beams, neutrons, e.g. for inspection of food which can cause burning, cancer and genetic mutation;		Р
	e) lasers, e.g. for measuring or cutting food products, which can cause burning or blindness.		Р
4.8	Hazards generated by materials and substances		-
4.8.1	Food products		-
	The products being processed in a food processing machine may injure operators in the following ways:		Р
	a) Inhalation of harmful substances		Р
	1) dusts and aerosols from processing food products –		Р
	Many foodstuffs including wheat flour, grain, spices, seasonings, enzymes and seafood can be hazardous to operators when they are being processed.		Р
	This is because they can cause an irritant, sensitising or allergic reaction such as occupational asthma.		Р
	Reactions of this sort can occur even if machines emit only a low concentration of dusts or fumes from these substances;		Р
	gases – Harmful gases, e.g. ammonia, can be emitted from freezing equipment on food processing machines.		Р
	b) Suffocation, asphyxiation, drowning		Р



Page 90th of 229

6- >	
1) processes – where food products are fermented,	Р
e.g. to make beer, malt, yeast, or yoghurt, carbon	
dioxide and other gases are given off reducing	

EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	oxygen levels and causing suffocation;		
	2) modified atmospheres – where gases such as		Р
	carbon dioxide or nitrogen are used to modify the		
	atmosphere for a process or prior to packaging,		
	oxygen levels can be reduced causing suffocation;		
	3) cryogenic freezing – where carbon dioxide or		Р
	nitrogen are used as a direct refrigeration medium,		
	oxygen levels can be reduced causing suffocation;		
	4) silos and other confined spaces – if operators		P
	enter a confined space in a food processing		
	machine and are engulfed by products, suffocation		
	or drowning can occur.		_
	c) Impact		Р
	when food is ejected from the machine or when		Р
	people enter silos and are hit by bulk flows of food		
	products;		
	d) Burns and scalds		Р
	from hot food, steam generated during cooking, or		Р
	frozen foods;		
	e) Microbiological contamination		Р
	When some products such as meat or poultry		Р
	by-products are being processed there may be a		
	risk to operators, maintenance personnel and		
	consumers from microbiological contamination.		
4.8.2	Hazards from cleaning media		-
	The chemicals used to clean and disinfect food		Р
	processing machines can be hazardous,		
	particularly in their concentrated form. Hazards can		
	arise if the chemicals		
	a) come into contact with the skin or eyes;		Р
	b) are swallowed;		Р
	c) are inhaled in the form of an aerosol, e.g. if used		Р
	in conjunction with a high-pressure hose or		
	compressed air.		



Page 91st of 229

Where high pressure water is used to clean	Р
machines there is a risk of	
– cutting hazards if the water contacts the skin;	Р

EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	electric shock if the water enters electrical		Р	
	enclosures.			
4.8.3	Hazards from operating machines in potentially		-	
	explosive atmospheres			
	Hazards can arise if food processing machines are		Р	
	operated in potentially explosive atmospheres or if			
	potentially explosive atmospheres are allowed to			
	form in parts of food processing machines, e.g. in			
	mills, sieves, conveyors, silos and spray dryers.			
	Explosive atmospheres can be:		Р	
	a) gases, mists of vapours, e.g. natural gas from		Р	
	gas fired equipment, alcohol from beverages or			
	flavourings, ammonia used in refrigeration			
	systems;			
	b) dusts, e.g. corn flour, wheat flour or icing sugar.		Р	
	Potentiall		Р	
	y explosive atmospheres can be ignited by the			
	following sources which can occur on food			
	processing machines:			
	1. electrical sparks, e.g. from electrical contactors		Р	
	or electric motors;			
	2. electrostatic discharges, e.g. plastic machine		Р	
	parts or components linked with plastic bushes;			
	3. mechanically generated sparks, e.g. milling		Р	
	rollers contaminated with tramp metal or stones, or			
	ferrous and aluminium components colliding;			
	4. hot surfaces, e.g. parts of ovens or mechanical		Р	
	components like bearings, which have become			
	overheated whilst failing.			
4.9	Hazards generated by neglecting		-	
	ergonomic principles in machine design			
4.9.1	General		-	



Page 92nd of 229

\mathcal{E}	
Hazards to safety and health can occur when	Р
people are carrying out manual tasks on the food	
processing machine.	
The risks from these hazards will be increased if	Р
the variability of the operator's physical	
anthropometric characteristics, strength and	

EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	stamina of operator are not taken into account and		
	if insufficient space is provided for movements of		
	the parts of the operator's body.		
	a) operation, e.g. assuming a bad posture;		Р
	b) loading product into the machine, e.g. assuming		Р
	a bad posture, using excessive effort, fatigue;		
	c) cleaning the machine, e.g. assuming a bad		Р
	posture, using excessive effort;		
	d) maintenance, e.g. assuming a bad posture,		Р
	using excessive effort;		
	e) moving the machine, e.g. using excessive effort,		Р
	fatigue.		
4.9.2	Human error		-
	Hazards can arise on food processing machines		Р
	due to human error as in the following cases:		
	a) failing to assemble the machine correctly;		Р
	b) failing to operate the machine correctly;		Р
	c) failing to maintain the machine correctly;		Р
	d) psychological stress, e.g. caused by the need for		Р
	monitoring that requires lengthy concentration or by		
	a poorly designed man/machinery interface;		
	e) mental underload, e.g. caused by a machine		Р
	determined work rate.		
4.10	Hazards due to position, identification and		-
	operation of controls		
4.10.1	General		-
	Hazards can arise if the controls of the machine are		Р
	not easy to access from the operating position or		
	cannot be easily identified. Hazards can also occur		
	if it is not possible to see the inside of the machine		
	from the control position.		



Page 93rd of 229

4.10.2	Inability to stop movement	-
	Hazards can arise particularly on semi-automatic	Р
	machines if operators cannot stop movement once	
	a machine cycle has been initiated.	
4.10.3	Failure to isolate	-

	EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	Hazards can arise if operators are unable to identify how to isolate all energy sources to a food processing machine, particularly energy sources		P	
	other than electricity, e.g. compressed air or steam.			
	Hazards include crushing, shearing, impact, drawing-in, electric shock and scalding.		Р	
4.11	Hazards caused by failures on the machine		-	
	Hazards can arise on food processing machines if failures occur. For example:		Р	
	a) failure of mechanical components, e.g. rotating parts, drive belts;		Р	
	b) failure of energy supplies, e.g. electricity, steam, gas, compressed air. Hazards can also arise when the energy supply is reconnected unexpectedly following a failure;		P	
	c) failure of control circuits, e.g. through wear or electromagnetic interference;		Р	
	d) failure of electronic drives systems, e.g. on systems where the power supply to a drive motor is not physically disconnected while the guards are open, there is a risk of unexpected start-up with consequential mechanical hazards if the control system fails or responds to an external disturbance such as electromagnetic interference;		P	
	e) unexpected ejection of fluids, e.g. compressed air if pipes rupture;		P	
	f) errors of fitting, e.g. if components fail because they have been fitted incorrectly;		P	
	g) over-run, e.g. if braking systems wear or fail;		Р	
	h) failure of safety-related components, e.g. guard interlocking devices, safety protection devices;		P	



Page 94th of 229

P
Р
Р
Р

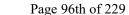
	EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict		
	on an emergency stop device become separated				
	from the actuator;				
	m) failure of guards and guard fixings, e.g. if guards		P		
	or their fixings break.				
4.40		+			
4.12	Hazards due to missing or wrongly		-		
	adjusted guards and safety devices		P		
	Hazards can arise if safety-critical parts of a food				
	processing machine are missing or wrongly adjusted. For example:				
	'		P		
	a) guards – e.g. if they are left off after cleaning or				
	maintenance;		P		
	b) safety protection devices – e.g. if they are		'		
	deliberately by-passed or wrongly adjusted;		P		
	c) safety signs – e.g. if they come off during		'		
	cleaning;		P		
	d) feeding and discharge equipment – e.g. if a		r		
	machine is run without feed chutes or discharge				
	conveyors which form part of the guarding of the				
	machine;		P		
	e) essential equipment for safe adjustment or				
	maintenance – e.g. if special tools are missing.				
4.13	Hazards due to the linking of machines and		-		
	processes				
	Many food processing machines operate in		Р		
	continuous production, and some cannot be				
	stopped immediately without creating additional				
	hazards either on the machine that has been				
	stopped or at some other point in the food				
	processing line.				



Page 95th of 229

	1 486 75 41 61 227	1/12 1 01 200 / 20 1/1	-10
	For instance, if a continuously fed biscuit oven is		Р
	stopped when full of product, the contents of the		
	oven will catch fire and there is a risk of the oven		
	band snapping and injuring people and damaging		
	equipment outside the confines of the oven.		
4.14	Hazards created by common mechanisms		-
	on food processing machines		
4.14.1	Feed hoppers		-
4.14.1.1	General		-

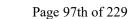
	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	Feed hoppers on food processing machines give rise to several hazards, but the risks from these hazards vary significantly depending on the following factors:		P
	a) the location of the hopper;		Р
	b) the size of the hopper;		Р
	c) whether the hopper is loaded manually or automatically;		Р
	d) the need for operator intervention in the hopper.		Р
4.14.1.2	Mechanical hazards		-





	Page 96th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-4921	. 8
	There are mechanical hazards (e.g. crushing,		Р
	shearing, drawing-in, or entanglement) at feed		
	hoppers caused by the mechanical assemblies that		
	are typically located at the base of feed hoppers		
	and in some hoppers which are equipped with		
	stirring devices.		
	Typically these mechanisms will cause irreversible		Р
	injuries.		
	Operators are exposed to these hazards in the		Р
	following situations:		
	a) loading product manually into the hopper;		Р
	b) assisting product flow in the hopper while the		Р
	machine is running or at the end of a production		
	run;		
	c) taking samples of or testing the product in the		Р
	hopper;		
	d) cleaning the hopper while the machine is in		Р
	motion.		
4.14.1.3	Slip and fall hazards		-
	Slip and fall hazards can occur at feed hoppers in		Р
	the following situations:		
	a) if it is necessary to stand on access steps, work		Р
	platforms or a part of the machine to carry out any		
	of the tasks listed in 4.14.1.2;		
	b) if the size and location of the hopper relative to		Р
	access positions make it possible to fall into the		
			I
	hopper while carrying out the tasks listed in		

	EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	4.14.1.2.			
4.14.1.4	Stability hazards		-	
	On small machines, if an operator rests a container		Р	
	full of product on the edge of the feed hopper, there			
	may be a risk of the machine falling over.			
4.14.1.5	Ergonomic hazards		-	
	Hazards resulting from excessive effort or		Р	
	assuming a bad posture can arise if feed hoppers			
	are loaded with product manually.			





	Page 9/th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-492	218
	The risk of these hazards will increase if the height		Р
	of the top of the feed hopper relative to the access		
	position is greater than 600 mm.		
4.14.2	Cutting devices		-
	Mechanical cutting devices present a cutting or		Р
	shearing hazard and – if they rotate – a drawing-in		
	or entanglement hazard:		
	a) when the machine is in normal operation;		Р
	b) if, when the machine's power supplies are		Р
	isolated, the mechanism moves unexpectedly due		
	to stored energy;		
	c) if during cleaning of the machine the operator		Р
	touches the exposed cutting surface;		
	d) when the device is handled during setting-up,		Р
	cleaning or maintenance.		
4.14.3	Conveyors		-
	Food processing machines will frequently be		Р
	supplied with or mounted over belt conveyors or		
	slat band conveyors.		
	Drawing-in or trapping hazards can be generated		Р
	where belts or slat bands pass over rollers or fixed		
	parts of the conveyor frame and where the		
	conveyor passes under fixed parts of the machine.		
	These hazards are increased if flights are attached		Р
	to the belt or slat band.		
5	Safety Requirements and protective		-
	measures		
5.1	General		-

EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	Food processing machines shall comply with the		P
	safety requirements and protective measures of		
	this clause. In addition, the machine shall be		
	designed according to the principles of EN ISO		
	12100 for relevant but insignificant hazards, which		
	are not dealt with by this document.		



Page 98th of 229

	Page 98th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-492	
	This clause requires the application of		Р
	type-B-standards such as EN ISO 13857, EN 349,		
	EN ISO 13850, EN ISO 13732-1, EN 574, EN 614,		
	EN 626, EN 894, EN ISO 13849-1, EN 953, EN ISO		
	4413, EN ISO 4414, EN 1037, EN 1088 and EN		
	ISO 14122.		
	In situations where this clause does not stipulate		Р
	which parts of the BS standard are applicable, the		
	manufacturer shall carry out an adequate risk		
	assessment to establish which requirements are		
	applicable.		
	Where a food processing machine has significant		Р
	hazards that are not described in Clause 4, the		
	manufacturer shall identify appropriate methods of		
	eliminating or minimising the risks from these		
	hazards by referring to European standards that		
	are relevant to that hazard.		
	Where food processing machines are integrated		Р
	with other machinery into a production line the		
	requirements of EN ISO 11161 shall apply for the		
	safety-relevant interconnection of the machines		
	and components.		
5.2	Requirements to eliminate mechanical		-
	hazards		
5.2.1	Safeguarding of moving parts		-
5.2.1.1	General		-
	preference shall be given to eliminating mechanical		Р
	hazards by design, e.g. by limiting the force, power		
	or movement of moving parts. See clause 5.2.1.2.		
	When selecting the most appropriate safeguarding		Р
	method for each part of a food processing machine,		
	Where hazards cannot be eliminated by design,		Р
	1		



	EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	mechanical hazards shall wherever possible be			
	safeguarded using guards that comply with EN			
	953.			
	Fixed guards, i.e. guards that are securely held in		Р	
	place with fixings that can only be undone using			
	tools, shall be used for parts of machines where			
	access is infrequent. See clause 5.2.1.3.			
	The use of safety protection devices on food		Р	
	processing machines shall be limited to situations			
	where fixed and moveable guards cannot be used			
	for technical reasons.			
5.2.1.2	Safety by design		-	
	Moving parts can be considered to be safe by		Р	
	design provided the force exerted by the moving			
	parts does not exceed 75 N, the pressure they			
	exert against an object is less than 25 N/cm² and			
	their energy is less than 4 J.			
	If the hazardous movement is automatically		P	
	reversed within 1 s when resistance is detected, the			
	movement can be considered as safe provided the			
	force does not exceed 150 N, the pressure does			
	not exceed 50 N/cm² and the energy is less than 10			
	J (Clause 5.2.5.2 of EN 953:1997+A1:2009).			
	Moving parts can also be made safe by design by		Р	
	ensuring sufficient distance between moving and			
	fixed parts and between one moving part and			
	another using the dimensions indicated in EN 349.			
	Rotating parts, handles or hand-wheels can be		Р	
	considered safe by design provided they are not			
	spoked, have no projections and are smooth.			
	Rotating shaft ends can be considered safe by		Р	
	design provided they are smooth, have no			
	protruding parts and do not protrude from the			
	machine more than ¼ of their diameter or 20 mm			
	whichever is the smaller.			
	Note: The measures indicated above may not be		Р	
	effective in all circumstances.			
	However subsequent clauses of this document indicate		Р	
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		



EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	situations where these measures are known to be			
	effective.			
	Where the measures indicated above are not effective,		Р	
	moving parts shall be safeguarded according to 5.2.1.3.			
5.2.1.3	Fixed and interlocked guards		-	
	Moving parts which cannot be made safe by design		Р	
	shall be safeguarded by fixed or interlocked			
	enclosing guards complying with EN 953 and			
	dimensioned using EN ISO 13857:2008, Table 4.			
	Where distance guards are used they shall be		Р	
	dimensioned and positioned in accordance with EN			
	ISO 13857:2008, Table 2, but shall be at least 1600			
	mm high.			
	Where it is foreseeable that someone will try to put		Р	
	their feet into a machine, e. g. because it is next to			
	an access platform, guards shall be dimensioned			
	and positioned in accordance with all relevant			
	tables in EN ISO 13857:2008.			
	As a general rule the fixings for fixed guards shall		Р	
	remain attached to either the guard or the machine			
	when the guard is removed, however, it is			
	acceptable to use a conventional fixing method			
	where the guard is only removed very infrequently.			
	The design of the guards and the number, size and		Р	
	position of access doors shall ensure that the			
	machine can be operated, cleaned and maintained			
	easily and safely.			
5.2.1.4	Openings in guards		-	
	Openings in guards shall be positioned or		Р	
	dimensioned to prevent access to danger zones			
	within the machine when standing on the floor or			
	access level and reaching into the opening.			
	The minimum safety distance to the nearest danger		Р	
	zone through the opening shall comply with EN ISO			
	13857:2008, Table 4.			
	Where the width of the opening is greater than 400		Р	
	mm or the height is greater than 120 mm the			
	safeguarding methods indicated in Annex C shall			



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	be used.		
5.2.1.5	Interlocking devices associated with guards		-
	Moveable guards shall be interlocked with devices		Р
	that comply with 4.2 of EN 1088:1995+A2:2008.		
	The requirements of Clauses 5 and 6 of EN		Р
	1088:1995+A2:2008 shall be satisfied.		
	EN ISO 13855 shall be used to determine if guard		Р
	locking devices complying with 4.2.2 and 5.5 of EN		
	1088:1995+A2:2008 need to be fitted to guard		
	doors to prevent access to moving parts while they		
	are slowing down.		
5.2.1.6	Operations with open guards		-
	Hazardous movements of moving parts may take		Р
	place when initiated by an operator using a		
	hold-to-run control device, but only if all of the		
	following requirements are fulfilled:		
	a) The design of the guards and control system		Р
	shall minimise the risks of injury to the operator and		
	other persons in the vicinity of the machine.		
	b) A hold-to-run control device shall be positioned		Р
	in such a way that the operator has a clear view of		
	all the parts of the machine where dangerous		
	movement is taking place.		
	c) The hold-to-run function shall only be available		Р
	after a lockable mode selection device, e.g. a key		
	operated switch, is operated.		
	Operation of this device shall prevent the machine		Р
	from operating in automatic mode.		
	d) If it is necessary to carry out the powered		Р
	movements with certain interlocked guards open,		
	all other interlocked guards which would allow		
	access to danger zones and are not within a clear		
	view of the operator shall continue to operate as		
	during normal operation;		
	e) Wherever possible the control system shall		Р
	ensure that movements initiated by the hold-to-run		
	control are limited, e.g. step by step, or at a		
	reduced speed or with reduced power.		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	f) The motion of moving parts shall stop as quickly		Р
	as possible, at least within 0,5 s after the		
	hold-to-run control has been released.		
	g) Release of the hold-to-run control button shall		Р
	lead to a safe stop and prevent unexpected start		
	up. See 5.3.1.4.		
	An emergency stop actuator complying with 5.10.3		Р
	shall be mounted next to the hold to run controls.		
5.2.2	Safety requirements for hygienic design		-
	features		
5.2.2.1	Quick release fixings		-
	Where quick release fixings, which can be undone		Р
	without the use of tools, are used to secure parts of		
	machines or guards that prevent access to danger		
	zones, an interlocking device complying with		
	5.2.1.5 shall be fitted which ensures that no		
	hazardous movement can occur when the fixings		
	are removed.		
	As far as technically possible these parts or guards		Р
	shall comply with the relevant requirements of		
	5.2.1.3.		
5.2.2.2	Guarding under machines		-
	Where the distance between the bottom of the		Р
	machine frame or guards and the floor is greater		
	than 50 mm and less than 120 mm it shall be		
	assumed that someone can get the full length of		
	their arm under the machine and so the distance		
	from the edge of the frame or guard to the nearest		
	danger zones shall be at least 850 mm.		
	See Figure 2.		Р
	Where the distance between the bottom of the		Р
	machine frame or guards and the floor is greater		
	than 120 mm and less than 200 mm it shall be		
	assumed that someone can get the full length of		
	their arm under the machine and part of their		
	shoulder and so the distance from the edge of the		
	frame or guard to the nearest danger zones shall		
	be at least 1000 mm.		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	Where the distance between the bottom of the		Р
	machine frame or guards and the floor is greater		
	than 200 mm, it shall be assumed that someone		
	can crawl under the machine and so the machine		
	shall be fitted with guards to prevent access from		
	danger zones from underneath the machine.		
	R		P
	Where h is ≥ 50 mm and < 120 mm, R shall be ≥ 850 mm.		Р
	Where h is > 120 mm and < 200 mm, R shall be ≥ 1000 mm.		Р
	Where h is > 200 mm, the machine shall be fitted with		Р
	guards to prevent access under the machine.		
	Figure 2 — Area free of danger zones		Р
5.2.2.3	Spillage trays		-
	Where the removal of spillage trays gives access to		Р
	danger zones and the trays only need to be		
	removed while the machine is stopped the tray		
	shall either		
	- be secured with fixings, e.g. locks, that can only		Р
	be undone with tools and remain attached to the		
	machine or the tray or		
	be fitted with an interlocking device complying		Р
	with 5.2.1.5 which ensures that the machine cannot		
	operate unless the tray is in place.		
	If it is necessary to remove the tray while the		Р
	machine is in operation access to the danger zone		



	EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	shall be prevented by either:			
	– fitting a fixed wire mesh guard above the tray		P	
	positioned and dimensioned according to EN ISO			
	13857 Table 4, or:			
	<u> </u>		P	
	- fitting a fixed wire mesh guard below the tray as			
	illustrated in Figure 3. Ensuring that the dimensions			
	and position of the mesh and the slot revealed			
	when the tray is removed shall comply with Table 4			
	of EN ISO 13857:2008, or:		P	
	fitted with mechanical interlocking devices which		F	
	prevent the tray from being removed until a guard is			
	inserted above the tray and prevent the guard from			
	being removed until the tray is put back in place, or:			
	- an alternative method which risk assessment		Р	
	suggests gives an equivalent level of safety.			
	Figure 3 — Fixed mesh guard positioned below		Р	
	spillage tray			
	5.2.3 Safety requirements for high pressure		Р	
	fluids			
	All pneumatic components and piping shall conform		Р	
	to the requirements of EN ISO 4414. All hydraulic			
	components, systems and piping shall conform to			
	the requirements of EN ISO 4413.			
	Where safety functions are controlled through		Р	
	hydraulic or pneumatic systems, these circuits shall			
	comply with the requirements of 5.3.1.4, and			
	5.3.1.7.			
	Unexpected start-up shall be prevented using the		Р	

	EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	measures described in EN 1037, and a separate means of isolation shall be provided for each type of energy.			
	The design shall ensure that hydraulic oil or pneumatic lubricating oil cannot come into contact with the product.		P	



The instruction handbook shall indicate how the operator and maintenance staff can avoid direct contact with hydraulic or pneumatic lubricating oil. Where high pressure water is used as a cutting medium interlocked guards complying with 5.2.1.3 shall be provided that prevent access to the high pressure water and are interlocked in such a way that the hazardous flow of water is stopped immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be used in preference to plate floors with a coefficient		Page 105th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-49218
contact with hydraulic or pneumatic lubricating oil. Where high pressure water is used as a cutting medium interlocked guards complying with 5.2.1.3 shall be provided that prevent access to the high pressure water and are interlocked in such a way that the hazardous flow of water is stopped immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		The instruction handbook shall indicate how the	Р
Where high pressure water is used as a cutting medium interlocked guards complying with 5.2.1.3 shall be provided that prevent access to the high pressure water and are interlocked in such a way that the hazardous flow of water is stopped immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		operator and maintenance staff can avoid direct	
medium interlocked guards complying with 5.2.1.3 shall be provided that prevent access to the high pressure water and are interlocked in such a way that the hazardous flow of water is stopped immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		contact with hydraulic or pneumatic lubricating oil.	
shall be provided that prevent access to the high pressure water and are interlocked in such a way that the hazardous flow of water is stopped immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		Where high pressure water is used as a cutting	Р
pressure water and are interlocked in such a way that the hazardous flow of water is stopped immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		medium interlocked guards complying with 5.2.1.3	
that the hazardous flow of water is stopped immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		shall be provided that prevent access to the high	
immediately when the guards are opened. 5.2.4 Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		pressure water and are interlocked in such a way	
Stored energy Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		that the hazardous flow of water is stopped	
Where a food processing machine contains stored energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		immediately when the guards are opened.	
energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam, the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be	5.2.4	Stored energy	-
the machine shall be designed in such a way that this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		Where a food processing machine contains stored	Р
this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g. using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		energy, e.g. compressed air or pressurised steam,	
using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		the machine shall be designed in such a way that	
sensor, and a means shall be provided to release this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		this energy cannot be released accidentally, e.g.	
this stored energy safely. 5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		using a guard-locking device linked to a pressure	
5.2.5 Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		sensor, and a means shall be provided to release	
hazards 5.2.5.1 Design to avoid slipping The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		this stored energy safely.	
The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be	5.2.5	Requirements to prevent slip, trip and falling	-
The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids, steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		hazards	
steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be	5.2.5.1	Design to avoid slipping	-
working platforms around the machine are contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		The design of the machine shall ensure that liquids,	Р
contained, e.g. in spillage trays. The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		steam or solids that could spill onto the floor or	
The design of work platforms and steps that are likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		working platforms around the machine are	
likely to become covered with water or other liquids during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		contained, e.g. in spillage trays.	
during operation or cleaning shall be provided with an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		The design of work platforms and steps that are	Р
an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		likely to become covered with water or other liquids	
EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g. machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		during operation or cleaning shall be provided with	
machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		an enhanced slip resistant surface as required by	
surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be		EN ISO 14 122-2: 2001, Clause 4.1.2 b, e.g.	
		machine-serrated open bar grating floors or top	
used in preference to plate floors with a coefficient		surface resin-bonded abrasive grit floors should be	
		used in preference to plate floors with a coefficient	

	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	of friction of less than 0,6.		
5.2.5.2	Design to avoid tripping		Р



	Page 106th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-49218
	The design of the machine should avoid	Р
	assemblies at low level that are likely to cause a trip	
	accident, and the instructions for use shall stress	
	the importance of routing cables and pipe work so	
	that it does not cause a tripping hazard.	
5.2.5.3	High level access	-
5.2.5.3.1	Design of means of access	-
	Where access is required to operate, adjust, clean,	Р
	disinfect, inspect, or maintain a machine in a	
	position which cannot be reached from the floor,	
	the manufacturer shall design or specify a safe	
	means of access to these areas.	
	The manufacturer shall follow the hierarchy in EN	Р
	ISO 14122-1 when selecting or designing this	
	means of access.	
5.2.5.3.2	Provision of means of access	-
	When high level access is required or expected to	Р
	take place once a week or more often, a permanent	
	or moveable means of access shall be provided by	
	the manufacturer with the machine.	
	When high level access is required or expected to	Р
	take place less often than once a week the	
	manufacturer is not required to provide the means	
	of access but shall describe in the instruction	
	handbook the temporary means of access to be	
	used to carry out these tasks.	
5.2.5.3.3	Construction of means of access	-
	Permanent working platforms shall comply with EN	Р
	ISO 14122-2.	
	Permanent stairs which are used once a week or	Р
	more often shall comply with EN ISO 14122-3.	
	Step ladders and fixed ladders shall only be used	Р
	where the criteria for their use set out in EN ISO	
	14122-1 is met.	
	Step ladders shall comply with EN ISO 14122-3	Р

EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	and fixed ladders shall comply with EN ISO		
	14122-4.		



	Page 107th of 229	MD-TCF-230728-49218	
	Movable platforms with stairs are an acceptable		Р
	alternative to a permanent means of access for		
	access once a week or more often, provided they		
	meet the requirements for EN ISO 14122 parts 2		
	and 3.		
5.2.5.3.4	Distance to danger zones		-
	It shall not be possible for the operator to reach any		Р
	danger zone on the machine when standing on the		
	permanent means of access.		
	The safety distances from the means of access to		Р
	the nearest danger zone shall comply with Table 2		
	of EN ISO 13857.		
	Where a movable means of access is provided for		Р
	frequent access, the design of the machine's		
	guards shall ensure that if is not possible to reach a		
	danger zone from this moveable means of access		
	wherever it is positioned around the machine.		
5.2.6	Stability of machines		-
5.2.6.1	Stability during operation		-
			Р
	The machine shall be designed and constructed so		Р
	The machine shall be designed and constructed so that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable		۲
			۲
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable		P
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations.		
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction		
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the		
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give		
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means		
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means of anchorage.		Р
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means of anchorage. On machines fitted with wheels, at least two wheels		Р
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means of anchorage. On machines fitted with wheels, at least two wheels shall be fitted with locking devices to ensure that		Р
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means of anchorage. On machines fitted with wheels, at least two wheels shall be fitted with locking devices to ensure that the machine does not move unexpectedly when it is		Р
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means of anchorage. On machines fitted with wheels, at least two wheels shall be fitted with locking devices to ensure that the machine does not move unexpectedly when it is in use.		P
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means of anchorage. On machines fitted with wheels, at least two wheels shall be fitted with locking devices to ensure that the machine does not move unexpectedly when it is in use. If it is foreseeable that someone will stand on the		P
	that it is stable during normal use and foreseeable abnormal situations. The manufacturer shall state in the instruction manual if the machine must be anchored to the floor or to another machine before use and give detailed information about the methods and means of anchorage. On machines fitted with wheels, at least two wheels shall be fitted with locking devices to ensure that the machine does not move unexpectedly when it is in use. If it is foreseeable that someone will stand on the machine, the manufacturer shall design the		P

EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
5.2.6.2	Stability while being moved		-



Page 108th of 229

- N III	Page 108th of 229	MD-1CF-230/28-49218
	The manufacturer shall provide information in the	Р
	instruction manual on how to move the machine	
	safely.	
	Machines fitted with wheels shall be designed so	Р
	that they are stable when they are placed on a	
	10°-slope in any orientation.	
5.3	Requirements to prevent electrical hazards	-
5.3.1	Electrical equipment	-
5.3.1.1	General	-
	Electrical equipment shall comply with EN	Р
	60204-1:2006. In the places where EN	
	60204-1:2006 provides various options, the options	
	stated below shall be used.	
5.3.1.2	Supply disconnecting device	-
	The machine shall be equipped with a readily	Р
	identifiable and accessible supply disconnection	
	device. This device shall be selected from those	
	listed in 5.3.2 of EN 60204-1:2006 and comply with	
	5.3.3 and 5.3.4 of that standard.	
	At least one such device shall be attached to the	Р
	machine. The actuator of the supply disconnection	
	device shall conform to EN 61310-3.	
5.3.1.3	Excepted circuits	-
	Some circuits, e.g. machine lighting circuits, do not	Р
	need to be disconnected by the supply	
	disconnection device.	
	Circuits that do not have to be disconnected are	Р
	listed in 5.3.5 of EN 60204-1:2006.	
	Those circuits that are not disconnected by the	Р
	main supply disconnecting device shall each have	
	their own supply disconnecting device, and the	
	notice and warning requirements of 5.3.5 of EN	
	60204-1:2006 shall be implemented.	
5.3.1.4	Prevention of unexpected start up	-
	Devices to prevent unexpected start up shall be	Р
	selected from 5.4 of EN 60204-1:2006 and shall be	



EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	designed so that they can be locked. The design of			
	the controls shall comply with EN 1037.			
	The control system shall be designed so that the		Р	
	machine does not start unexpectedly, e.g. under			
	the following conditions:			
	a) as a result of a signal generated by a sensor		Р	
	(except when in automatic mode);			
	b) by closing an interlocked guard (unless it is a		Р	
	control guard);			
	c) by restoring the power supply after an		Р	
	interruption.			
5.3.1.5	Protection against electric shock		-	
	Electric shock by direct contact shall be prevented		Р	
	by choosing from the methods described in clause			
	6.2 of EN 60204-1:2006, and electric shock by			
	indirect contact shall be prevented by choosing			
	from the methods described in 6.3 of EN			
	60204-1:2006.			
5.3.1.6	Degree of protection		-	
	The protection level for electrical enclosures, as		Р	
	defined by EN 60529, shall be selected for the			
	machine and its environment, in accordance with			
	Clause 11.3 of EN 60204-1: 2006 and Tables 1 and			
	2 of this standard.			
	The manufacturer shall state in the instructions for		Р	
	use any restrictions on cleaning techniques, e. g.			
	"the electrical enclosures are protected to IP65 and			
	so the machine should only be cleaned using low			
	pressure water".			

Table 1 — Degree of protection for dusty environments

Dusty Environment	Required degree of protection (EN 60529)
Non conducting dusts	IP 5X
Conducting dusts	IP 6X





EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test		Result	Verdict

Table 2 — Degree of protection for different cleaning methods using water

Method of cleaning	Required degree of protection (EN 60529)
Cleaning without water	IP X3
Cleaning with damp cloth	IP X4
Cleaning with low pressure water (12.5 l/min	IP X5
maximum)	
Cleaning with medium(100 l/min maximum)	IP X6
pressure water	
Cleaning with high pressure water	IP X9

	Note 1: The tests for electrical enclosures stipulated by	Р
	EN 60529, use water.	
		P
	Therefore, if fluids other than water are used for	
	cleaning or the water contains a detergent, it may be	
	necessary to use a higher IP rating than indicated by EN	
	60529 and Table 2.	
	Note 2: It is possible to use either fixed or movable	Р
	hoods to prevent the ingress of water into electrical	
	enclosures during cleaning.	
5.3.1.7	Emergency stop	-
	Where food processing machines are provided	Р
	with an emergency stop device it shall comply with	
	EN ISO 13850, and the emergency stop function	
	shall comply with 9.2.5.4.2 of EN 60204-1:2006.	
5.3.1.8	Cables in wire trays	-
	Where open wire trays are used to support cables,	Р
	sufficient mechanical protection shall be provided	
	for the cables to ensure that they cannot be	
	damaged or pulled from glands during normal	
	operation, cleaning and maintenance activities.	
5.3.2	Electrostatic phenomena	-
	Where there is a risk of a build-up of static	Р
	electricity on a food processing machine, the	
	manufacturer shall provide the necessary earth	
	bonding or static elimination equipment to ensure	
	that no hazardous build-ups occur.	



EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
5.4	Thermal hazards		-	
	As a general rule the temperature of touchable		Р	
	surfaces on food processing machines should not			
	exceed the burn thresholds defined in EN ISO			
	13732-1:2008 for hot surfaces and EN ISO			
	13732-3:2008 for cold surfaces.			
	If this is technically impossible the manufacturer		Р	
	shall eliminate the burning risk by insulation, or			
	shall prevent access, for example by fitting a			
	distance guard.			
	If these measures are not sufficient a hot or cold		Р	
	surface warning pictogram as illustrated in Figure			
	13 and 14 shall be fitted either on or immediately			
	adjacent to the hot or cold surface.			
	Figure 4 — Use of expanded mesh and		Р	
	punched metal to prevent accidental contact			
	with hot surfaces on food machinery			
	Where the operation of the food processing		Р	
	machine is likely to generate a hot or cold			
	environment in the area where the machine is			
	being operated, the manufacturer shall provide			
	information in the instructions for use on the steps			
	that the user must take to prevent health			
	damaging effects to operators and maintenance			
	personnel, e.g. the provision of ventilation, air			
	conditioning or personal protection equipment.			
5.5	Noise reduction		Р	
	The design of food processing machines shall as		Р	



EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	far as is reasonably practicable reduce noise at its			
	source.			
	Noise can be reduced or eliminated at source		Р	
	using measures that include the following:			
	a) Drive mechanisms can be fitted with acoustic		Р	
	attenuation materials.			
	b) Timing belts can be used in the place of drive		Р	
	chains.			
	c) Mechanisms should be designed so that they do		Р	
	not hit against each other.			
	d) Air exhausts should be fitted with silencers.		Р	
	Additional design measures can be found in EN		Р	
	ISO 11688-1.			
	This list is not exhaustive, alternative technical		Р	
	measures for noise reduction with identical or			
	greater efficiency can be used.			
	The criterion for assessing the efficiency of these		Р	
	measures is the actual noise emission values and			
	not the nature of the reduction measures			
	themselves.			
5.6	Vibration		-	
	Where food processing machines contain		Р	
	mechanisms that vibrate, the manufacturer shall			
	ensure that hazardous vibration is not transmitted			
	to people operating the machine.			
5.7	Radiation		-	
	Where machines contain radiation sources or		Р	
	equipment that generates radiation, the			
	manufacturer shall ensure that undesirable			
	radiation emissions from the machinery are			
	eliminated or be reduced to levels that do not have			
	adverse effects on persons.			
	The following risk reduction methods shall be		Р	
	used:			
	a) low frequency, radio frequency and		Р	
	micro-waves, e.g. contained using Faraday cages;			



Page 113th of 229

MD-TCF-230728-49218

b) infra-red, visible light and ultra-violet light, e.g.	Р
contained using light baffles;	



	EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict		
	c) X- and gamma rays, e.g. contained using the		Р		
	methods described in CEN/TR 14715;				
	d) alpha and beta particles, electron or ion beams,		Р		
	neutrons, e.g. contained using the methods				
	described in CEN/TR 14715;				
	e) lasers, e.g. contained using the methods		P		
	described in EN ISO 11553 parts 1 to 3.				
5.8	Food products, materials and substances		-		
5.8.1	Food products		-		
	Where the manufacturer knows the food products		Р		
	that will be processed in the food processing				
	machine, the manufacturer shall design and equip				
	the machine in such a manner that operators and				
	maintenance personnel are protected from any				
	hazards presented by these food products.				
	Where the manufacturer does not know the food		Р		
	products that will be processed in the food				
	processing machine, the manufacturer shall state				
	in the instructions for use any assumptions that				
	have been made about the intended use of the				
	machine,				
	e.g. "This machine has been designed on the		P		
	assumption that it will only be used to process				
	non-hazardous food products".		_		
	a) Inhalation of harmful substances		Р		
	- When choosing methods of reducing hazards		P		
	from hazardous food products and gases like				
	ammonia, reference shall be made to EN 626-1.				
	b) Suffocation and asphyxiation		P		
	- On food processing machines where there is a		Р		
	risk of suffocation if people enter the machine, e.g.				
	for cleaning or carrying out maintenance, the				
	manufacturer shall design a safe system for				
	carrying out these tasks which is described in the				
	information for use and supply any means of				
	isolation or ventilation necessary to control the				
	atmosphere within the machine.				



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	Where a food processing machine emits gases,		Р
	e.g. nitrogen or carbon dioxide, that are likely to		
	reduce oxygen levels around the machine, the		
	manufacturer shall provide information on how		
	safe levels of oxygen can be maintained to prevent		
	suffocation of operators working near the machine,		
	e.g. adequate ventilation and monitoring of oxygen		
	levels.		
	Where it is necessary for someone to enter a		P
	confined space within a food processing machine,		
	the manufacturer shall provide readily identifiable		
	and accessible isolating valves which can be		
	locked in the closed position for each feed point to		
	the enclosed space.		
	c) Impact – The manufacturer shall ensure that the		P
	design of the food processing machine protects		
	exposed persons from impact hazards.		
	d) Burns and scalds – The manufacturer shall		P
	ensure that the design of the food processing		
	machine protects exposed persons from burns		
	and scalds from food products. See 0.		
	e) Microbiological contamination – When choosing		P
	methods of reducing hazards from hazardous food		
	products reference shall be made to EN 626-1.		
5.8.2	Cleaning media		-
	When selecting the method for cleaning the		P
	machine, the manufacturer shall give preference		
	to cleaning methods that minimize the hazards to		
	the operator and minimize the risk of		
	contaminating the product, i.e. methods that do		
	not use hazardous chemicals.		
	If the cleaning method adopted recommends the		P
	use of hazardous chemicals for cleaning, the		
	manufacturer shall design the machine and the		
	operating procedures to minimise the risk to		
	operators by providing:		_
	– an automated handling, dilution, use and		P
	recovery system for the chemical (in-place		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	cleaning system);		
	- detailed instructions on the correct method of		Р
	handling the chemical and cleaning the machine		
	and the appropriate personal protection equipment		
	in the instructions for use.		
	Where the manufacturer recommends the use of		Р
	steam or pressurised water for cleaning, the		
	manufacturer shall ensure that electrical		
	equipment on the machine has the appropriate		
	degree of protection. See clause 5.3.1.6.		
	Where an automated clean in place (CIP) or		Р
	sterilise in place (SIP) is provided which uses a		
	hazardous cleaning medium, the manufacturer		
	shall equip the machine with		
	– guard-locking devices complying with EN 1088		Р
	which prevent accidental opening of lids or guards		
	and exposure to the cleaning media during the		
	cleaning or sterilising cycle;		
	a visual warning device which operates during		Р
	the cleaning or sterilising cycle		
5.8.3	Requirements for machines used in potentially		Р
	explosive atmospheres		
	Where a manufacturer is advised that a food		P
	processing machine will be used in a potentially		
	explosive atmosphere or will be handling a product		
	that could form a potentially explosive atmosphere		
	within the equipment, the manufacturer shall		
	ensure that the design of the machine		
	- prevents the formation of explosive atmospheres		Р
	by following the principles described in EN1127-1;		
	– prevents the ignition of an explosive atmosphere		Р
	by whatever means by using electrical equipment		
	complying with EN 60079-0 and by following the		
	requirements of EN 13463-1 for non-electrical		
	sources of ignition;		
	– on machines where an explosion is likely to		Р
	occur, the manufacturer shall design the		
	equipment so that the explosion can be halted		



	EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	immediately or limited in range, e.g. by fitting			
	explosion suppression equipment complying to EN			
	14373 or explosion relief panels complying to EN			
	14491.			
	Equipment that can be used in potentially		Р	
	explosive atmospheres is divided into three			
	categories:			
	– Category 1 – Equipment that can be used in an		Р	
	environment where explosive gas or dust			
	atmospheres are present continuously or for long			
	periods.			
	– Category 2 – Equipment that can be used in an		Р	
	environment where explosive gas or dust			
	atmospheres are likely to occur in normal use.			
	- Category 3 - Equipment that can be used in an		Р	
	environment where explosive gas or dust			
	atmospheres are unlikely to occur, but if they do,			
	this will be infrequently and for a short period of			
	time only.			
	On machines that are handling a product that		Р	
	could form a potentially explosive atmosphere			
	within the equipment, the category of the			
	components used within the area where this			
	explosive atmosphere can form may need to be			
	different from the category of those components			
	used in other areas of the machine.			
5.9	Ergonomic design principles		-	
5.9.1	General		-	
	The manufacturer shall ensure that the food		P	
	processing machine is designed to avoid			
	ergonomic hazards in the following ways:			
5.9.2	Operating the machine		Р	
	Controls and control panels shall be positioned		P	
	according to the requirements of EN 614-1.			
	The indicators and actuators shall comply with EN		Р	
	894-1, EN 894-2, EN 894-3, EN 61310-1 and EN			
	61310-3. Indication lights fitted to the machine			
	shall comply with the requirements of EN			



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	60204-1:2006, 10.3.2 and 10.3.3.		
5.9.3	Loading product into the feed hopper		-
	On machines where the hopper cannot be loaded		Р
	conveniently from floor level, e.g. if the height of		
	the hopper is 1400 mm or greater, the		
	manufacturer shall either provide a mechanism to		
	load product into the hopper or a permanent		
	means of access, e.g. stairs and a platform,		
	complying with the requirements of EN ISO 14122		
	parts 1 to 3.		
5.9.4	Cleaning the machine		-
	The parts of the machine which must be reached		Р
	for cleaning shall be easily accessible.		
	This may involve providing additional interlocked		Р
	guards, access platforms designed for cleaning		
	work or designing the machine so it can be cycled		
	to a position where cleaning can be carried out		
	without the risk of injury.		
5.9.5	Maintenance		-
	The design of the machine shall minimise the risk		Р
	of physical strain when carrying out maintenance.		
	This may require the provision of lifting beams		P
	over heavy drives or gearboxes or the provision of		
	mechanical handling equipment to minimise risks		
	from ergonomic hazards.		
5.9.6	Moving the machine		-
	The manufacturer shall provide instructions in the		Р
	instruction handbook on how to move the machine		
	safely. Where machines are equipped with wheels		
	the manufacturer shall ensure that the machine		
	can be moved without the need for excessive		
	effort.		
5.10	Controls		-
5.10.1	General		-
	The controls on a food processing machine shall		Р
	be designed so that they are robust, easily		
	accessible and their function is easily identifiable.		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	Where technically feasible, the controls shall be		Р
	positioned so that the operator has a clear view of		
	the interior of the machine from the control		
	position.		
5.10.2	Stop Function		-
	Each workstation of a food processing machine		Р
	shall be equipped with a stop button.		
	On semi-automatic machines this stop button shall		Р
	be within easy reach of the operator when the		
	operator is in the operating position.		
5.10.3	Emergency stop devices on large machines		-
	Where the perimeter of a standalone machine is		Р
	greater than 10 metres the machine shall be		
	equipped with two or more than emergency stop		
	devices and the devices shall be positioned so that		
	they are no further than 10 metres apart.		
	Where the machine is typically included in a line of		Р
	machines, emergency stop devices shall be		
	positioned on both sides of the machine or in a		
	position where it can be accessed from both sides		
	of the machine.		
5.10.4	Means of isolation of energy supplies		-
	Food processing machines shall be equipped with		Р
	a readily identifiable and accessible means of		
	isolation for each type of energy supplied to the		
	machine which can be locked in the off position.		
	Compressed air isolation valves shall be clearly		P
	labelled to indicate their purpose and the method		
	of operation of the valve and shall have the facility		
	to release stored energy.		
	Electricity isolation devices shall comply with		Р
	5.3.1.2.		<u> </u>
	If the electrical isolation device does not isolate all		P
	energy sources, this fact shall be marked on the		
	isolation device and described in the instruction		
	handbook.		
5.11	Requirements to prevent failures		-



	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	The manufacturer shall design the food processing		Р
	machine so that hazards do not arise following		
	component or system failures in the following		
	ways:		
	a) failure of mechanical components –		Р
	components shall be robust and suitable for their		
	intended use;		
	b) failure of energy supplies – no hazard shall		P
	arise following a failure of the power supply;		
	c) failure of control circuits – no hazard shall arise		P
	following a control circuit failure and the design of		
	the food processing machine shall ensure that it is		
	possible to stop the machine safely following a		
	control system failure;		
	d) failure of electronic drive systems		Р
	- where hazardous movement of machinery is		Р
	controlled by servo, rectifier, inverter or similar		
	electronic drive systems, the design of the safety		
	related parts of the control system shall prevent		
	unexpected start up during short term		
	interventions, e.g. the removal of misshaped		
	products during normal operation.		
	Where the safety related pulse blocking,		Р
	monitoring or control functions are achieved with		
	electrical or electronic control systems, they shall		
	comply with performance level "d" of EN ISO		
	13849-1.		
	The manufacturer shall ensure that the instruction		P
	handbook emphasises that these methods of		
	preventing the unexpected start-up of drives are		
	only suitable for short duration machine		
	interventions and that safe isolation procedures		
	should be used for long term interventions like		
	cleaning or maintenance.		
	The instructions shall state how these drives shall		P
	be isolated and stored energy safely dissipated.		
	e) unexpected ejection of fluids – the food		P
	processing machine shall be designed to ensure		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	that liquids and gases, including, compressed air,		
	steam, the product and hydraulic fluid cannot		
	escape unexpectedly;		
	f) errors of fitting – the food processing machine		Р
	shall be designed so that hazards cannot arise if		
	parts that have to be removed and replaced for		
	cleaning or product changing are fitted incorrectly;		
	g) over-run – food processing machines shall be		Р
	designed so that the over-run following a stop		
	command is less than the time it takes for an		
	operator to reach danger zones.		
	Where this requirement is achieved by the use of a		Р
	brake, the manufacturer shall provide information		
	in the instruction handbook on the frequency and		
	method of adjusting this brake to maintain a safe		
	operation;		
	h) failure of safety-related components – unless		Р
	stated otherwise in this standard or indicated by		
	risk assessment the following requirements shall		
	apply:		
	- Safety functions incorporating electrical and		Р
	electronic components shall comply with at least		
	performance level "d" of EN ISO 13849-1:2008		
	- Safety functions incorporating hydraulic and		Р
	pneumatic components shall comply with at least		
	performance level "c" of EN ISO 13849-1:2008.		
	- Hydraulic and pneumatic two-hand controls shall		Р
	comply with type III A, and electric/electronic		
	twohand controls shall comply with type III B of EN		
	574:1996+A1:2008 and type III of EN		
	60204-1:2006.		
	Two-hand-controls shall be positioned in		Р
	accordance with EN 13855.		
	i) Failure of energy supply disconnection devices –		Р
	the manufacturer shall use isolating switches,		
	plugs and valves that are specifically designed for		
	the purpose of isolating energy supplies;		
	j) Failure of starting or stopping devices – the		P
	1), I aliale of starting of stopping devices – tile		



	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	normal stops and emergency stops shall be stops		
	of Category 0 or 1 as defined in Clause 9.2.5.3 of		
	EN 60204-1:2006 or their equivalent where the		
	controls are pneumatic or hydraulic.		
	Workstations of food processing machines shall		Р
	be equipped with a normal stop device in		
	accordance with the requirements above, which		
	can be accessed easily from the operating position		
	and can stop all of the moving parts of the		
	machine.		
	k) failure of information or warning devices		Р
	where information or warning devices have a		Р
	safety-critical function, the manufacturer shall		
	provide a method of monitoring these devices that		
	will alert the user if a failure has occurred.		
	I) failure of emergency devices – food processing		Р
	machines shall be provided with an emergency		
	stop button located on each control station. The		
	emergency stop function shall comply with 9.2.5.3		
	of EN 60204-1:2006.		
	The emergency stop device shall comply with EN		Р
	ISO 13850:2008.		
	m) failure of guards and guard fixings –		Р
	the manufacturer shall design guards and guard		Р
	fixings so that when used as intended they will last		
	the lifetime of the machine.		
	The manufacturer shall include details on how to		Р
	maintain guards and guard fixings in the		
	instruction handbook.		
5.12	Requirements to prevent hazards due to		-
	missing or wrongly adjusted guards and		
	safety devices		
	The manufacturer shall comply with the following		P
	requirements to prevent hazards from missing or		
	wrongly adjusted guards or safety devices:		
	a) guards – Where there is a risk of guards being		P
	removed an left off following routine cleaning and		
	product changing, these guards shall be fitted with		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	interlocks complying with 5.2.1.5 that prevent the		
	machine from operating if the guard is missing.		
	b) safety protection devices – Electro sensitive		P
	protective equipment (ESPE) shall conform to EN		
	61496-1:2004+A1:2008, Type 2 or Type 4,		
	depending on the risk assessment, and shall be		
	positioned in accordance with EN 13855:2010 to		
	ensure that any hazardous movement has been		
	stopped before the operator reaches		
	the danger zone.		
	c) safety signs – Warning symbols complying with		Р
	EN 61310 shall be used in preference to warning		
	notices.		
	The manufacturer shall select materials of		Р
	construction and fixing methods for safety signs		
	that will be compatible with the cleaning methods		
	of the food processing machine.		
	The position and purpose of all safety signs fitted		Р
	on the machine shall be noted in the instruction		
	handbook.		
	d) feeding and discharge equipment – Where the		Р
	removal without tools of feeding or discharging		
	equipment e.g. conveyors, exposes danger zones		
	on the food processing machine, the feeding or		
	discharging equipment shall be interlocked with		
	the food processing machine in such a way that		
	when the feeding or discharging equipment is		
	removed, the food processing machine cannot		
	operate.		
	The interlocking devices used shall comply with		Р
	5.2.1.5.		
	e) Essential equipment for safe adjustment and		Р
	maintenance		
	Where special tools are required for the safe		Р
	adjustment of a food processing machine, these		
	shall be supplied with the machine by the		
	manufacturer.		
5.13	Requirements for machines and		_
0.10			_



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	processes that are linked together	,	
	Where food processing machines operate in		Р
	continuous production and cannot be stopped		
	immediately without creating additional hazards		
	either on the machine that has been stopped or at		
	some other point in the food processing line, the		
	manufacturer shall design the machine or system		
	in such a way that the machine or system can be		
	brought safely into a mode where the significant		
	hazards of the machine are eliminated in as short		
	a time as is reasonably practicable.		
	See EN ISO 11161:2007+A1:2010 for more		Р
	information on this subject.		
5.14	Requirements for common mechanisms		_
••••	on food processing machines		
5.14.1	Safety requirements for feed hoppers		-
5.14.1.1	General		-
	The hazards at feed hoppers can be safeguarded		Р
	in a variety of ways, nine of which are described in		
	this standard, however some methods of		
	safeguarding are only suitable in specific		
	situations		
	e.g. when the hopper is fed automatically and		Р
	some methods of safeguarding give a better level		
	of protection than others.		
	Moreover safeguarding solutions which reduce the		Р
	risk from the mechanical hazard		
	e.g. increasing the height of the hopper, may		Р
	increase the ergonomic risks when loading		
	product into the hopper and measures introduced		
	to reduce the ergonomic risk,		
	e.g. providing stairs or a platform may increase the		Р
	risk of slipping and falling and from mechanical		
	hazards.		
	The method chosen to eliminate the mechanical		Р
	hazards shall take into account the anticipated		
	activities associated with the hopper and the other		
	risks that may result from these activities, e.g.		



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	ergonomic, slip and fall hazards.		
	Table 3 can be used to compare the relative merits		P
	of different safeguarding methods.		
5.14.1.2	Safeguarding moving parts in feed hoppers		
			-
5.14.1.2.1	Solid interlocked guard		-
	Where the top of the hopper is safeguarded with a		P
	solid interlocked guard complying with 5.2.2.1 the		
	hopper can be of any height, regardless of the		
	height of the danger zone in the hopper. See		
	Figure 5.		
			P
	The distances from openings to the nearest danger		-
	zone shall comply with Table 4 of EN ISO 13857.		
	The guard shall be interlocked with a device complying		-
	with EN 1088.		
	Figure 5 — Solid interlocked guard		-
5.14.1.2.2	Interlocked guard with openings		-
	Where the top of the hopper is safeguarded with		Р
	an interlocked guard complying with 5.2.2.1 which		
	contains openings up to 120 mm wide, the		
	distance from the opening to the nearest danger		
	zone shall comply with Table 4 of EN ISO 13857.		



Page 126th of 229

MD-TCF-230728-49218

Where the height of the hopper from the nearest	Р
access position is less than 600 mm there is a risk	
that someone may try to put their legs through the	



	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	openings and so the reach distance from the opening to the nearest danger zone shall be determined using Table 4 and Table 7 of EN ISO 13857. See Figure 6.		
			P
	D, the distance to the nearest danger zone, shall be determined using Table 4 of EN ISO 13857.		Р
	The guard shall be interlocked with a device complying with EN 1088.		Р
	Figure 6 — Interlocked guard with openings		-
5.14.1.2.3	Fixed guard		-
	Where the top of the hopper is safeguarded with a fixed guard complying with 5.2.2.1 which comprises bars set up to 120 mm wide, the distance from the opening to the nearest danger zone shall comply with Table 4 of EN ISO 13857.		Р
	Where the height of the hopper from the nearest access position is less than 600 mm there is a risk that someone may try to put their legs through the bars and so the reach distance from the opening to the nearest danger zone shall be determined using both EN ISO 13857 Table 4 and Table 7. See Figure 7.		Р



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
			-
	D, the distance to the nearest danger zone, shall be determined using Table 4 of EN ISO 13857 and if there is a risk of someone standing in the hopper Table 7.		-
	Figure 7 — Fixed guard		-
5.14.1.2.4	Guarding by distance		-
	Guarding by distance alone is only permissible where the feed hopper is fed automatically and there is no risk of people accessing the hopper using mobile steps or by climbing on the machine. b shall be > 1600 mm, otherwise b and c shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone a, using Table 2 of EN ISO 13857. See Figure 8.		Р



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
			-
	b shall be > 1600 mm, otherwise b and c shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone a, using Table 2 of EN ISO 13857.		-
	Figure 8 — Guarding by distance		-
5.14.1.2.5	Interlocked stairs and platform		-
	Guarding by distance in conjunction with an interlocked set of steps and platform is suitable for use in a situation where the hopper has to be fed manually, but because of the risk of slipping and falling on the stairs is less desirable than 1 or 2. <i>b</i> shall be > 1600 mm, otherwise <i>b</i> and <i>c</i> shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone <i>a</i> , using Table 2 of EN ISO 13857.		Р
	The design of the stairs shall comply with EN ISO 14122-3 and the platform and handrails to EN ISO 14122-2.		Р
	The stairs and platform shall be interlocked with suitable devices, e.g. complying with EN 1088. See Figure 9.		Р



EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
			-	
	b shall be > 1600 mm, otherwise b and c shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone a, using Table 2 of EN ISO 13857.		-	
	The design of the stairs shall comply with EN ISO 14122-3 and the platform and handrails to EN ISO 14122-2.		-	
	The stairs and platform shall be interlocked with a device complying with EN 1088.		-	
	Figure 9 — Interlocked stairs and platform		-	
5.14.1.2.6	Interlocked hinged step		-	
	Guarding by distance in conjunction with an interlocked hinged step allows the operator to look inside the hopper or to take samples without the risk of injury from moving parts.		Р	
	However this is not a suitable safeguarding method for hoppers which are fed manually. <i>b</i> shall be > 1600 mm, otherwise <i>b</i> and <i>c</i> shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone <i>a</i> , using Table 2 of EN ISO 13857. <i>h</i> shall not exceed 500 mm, and the step shall be interlocked with a device complying with EN 1088. See Figure 10.		Р	
	b shall be > 1600 mm otherwise b and c shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone a, using Table 2 of EN ISO 13857. h shall not exceed 500 mm, and the step shall be interlocked with a device complying with EN 1088.		Р	



EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	Figure 10 — Hopper with interlocked hinged step		-	
5.14.1.2.7	Swan neck hopper		-	
	The swan-neck hopper is a variation on guarding by distance where the horizontal distance from the danger zone is increased by a horizontal chute and access into the hopper is restricted by limiting the height of the chute. <i>b</i> shall be > 1600 mm, otherwise <i>b</i> and <i>c</i> shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone <i>a</i> , using Table 1 of EN ISO 13857. <i>d</i> shall be < 400 mm. See Figure 11.		P	
			P	
	b shall be > 1600 mm, otherwise b and c shall be determined on the basis of the height of the danger zone a, using Table 1 of EN ISO 13857. d shall be < 400 mm.		Р	
	Figure 11 — Swan neck hopper		Р	
5.14.1.2.8	Hopper fitted with ESPE		Р	
	Electro-sensitive protection equipment (ESPE) can be used as a safety protection device for a feed hopper provided it is positioned sufficiently far from the danger zone so that the moving parts have time to stop before the danger zone is		Р	



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	reached.		
	In general this will mean that the drives of the		P
	moving parts will need to be braked.		'
	The electro-sensitive protection equipment shall		P
	comply with EN 61496-2. <i>D</i> ₄ shall be determined		'
	on the basis of the stopping time of the machine		
	using EN ISO 13855. See Figure 12.		
	†d		Р
	The electro-sensitive protection equipment shall comply		P
	with EN 61496-2. <i>D</i> ₄ shall be determined on the basis of		·
	the stopping time of the machine using EN 13855.		
	Figure 12 — Hopper with ESPE		-
5.14.1.2.9	Hopper fitted with sensitive edges		-
	Pressure sensitive edges can be fitted to the top		P
	edges of feed hoppers to stop movement of the		
	dangerous parts if someone leans on the devices.		
	The pressure sensitive devices shall comply with		Р
	EN 1760-2 shall be fitted to all accessible edges of		
	the feed hopper.		
	The design of the sensitive edges shall minimise		Р
	the risk of product building up around the devices		
	and preventing them operating. <i>b</i> shall be > 1600		
	mm, otherwise b and c shall be determined on the		
	basis of the height of the danger zone a, using		
	Table 1 of EN ISO 13857. See Figure 13.		
	The pressure sensitive devices shall comply with EN		Р
	1760-2 shall be fitted to all accessible edges of the feed		
	hopper.		
	The design of the sensitive edges shall minimise the risk		Р
	1	1	i



	EN 1672-1						
Clause	Requirement – Test Result Verdict						
	of product building up around the devices and						
	preventing them operating. <i>b</i> shall be > 1600 mm,						
	otherwise b and c shall be determined on the basis of						
	the height of the danger zone a, using Table 1 of EN						
	ISO 13857.						

Figure 13 —Hopper with sensitive edges

Table 3 — Comparison of different feed hopper safeguarding methods

1 11					
Safeguarding Method	Automatic	Manual	Assisting	Taking	Cleaning
	feeding	feeding	product	samples	while
			flow		running
1 - Solid interlocked guard	3	3	•	•	•
2 - Interlocked guard with openings	3	3	3	3	3
3 - Fixed guard	3	•	!m	•	!m
4 - Guarding by distance	0	0	!m	!m	!m
5 - Interlocked stairs and platform	3	•	•	•	•
5 - Interlocked hinged step	3	•	S	s	S
7 - Swan neck hopper	•	!e	2	2	3
8 - Hopper fitted with photocell	3	•	•	•	•
9 - Hopper fitted with sensitive edges	3	•	!m	!m	!m

- Suitable
- s Suitable but machine stops while this activity takes place
- Unsuitable
- o Not preferred

	e Ergonomic residual risks	Р
	m Mechanical residual risks.	Р
	Only acceptable if the risk of injury is medium or	р
	low.	
5.14.2	Cutting devices	-
5.14.2.1	General	-
1		
	Knives and cutting devices on food processing	Р
	Knives and cutting devices on food processing machines shall not only be safeguarded while they	Р
		Р
	machines shall not only be safeguarded while they	Р



EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	Methods of achieving this objective include the		Р	
	following:			
	- positioning the cutting device so that		Р	
	unintentional contact with the knife-edge is			
	avoided during installation and removal or;			
	- equipping the cutting device with a detachable		P	
	knife-edge guard.			
	Cutting-edge guards shall, if detachable, be easy		Р	
	to attach and remove and sufficiently robust to			
	withstand being hit by an operator's hand or arm.			
	Note: The force of a hand or arm can be assumed to be		Р	
	200 N when the person only is able to reach into the			
	cutting device, and 800 N when the knife is positioned			
	so that the operator can lean over the knife.			
5.14.2.2	Requirements to avoid injury when installing		-	
	or removing the cutting device			
	The cutting device shall be designed so that it can		Р	
	be held and moved without the risk of contact with			
	the knifeedge.			
	This can be achieved by:		P	
	- shaping the cutting device so that it can be		Р	
	gripped firmly on the side opposite to the			
	cutting-edge or;			
	- providing a loose holding device which can hold		Р	
	the cutting device or;			
	- providing a cutting device holder that can be		Р	
	fastened to the device with bolts, a magnet or a			
	clamping mechanism.			
	Handles and grips designed for holding the cutting		Р	
	device shall be suitable for supporting the weight			
	and shape of the knife and be designed so the			
	knife can be held with the knife-edge directed			
	away from the person holding the knife.			
5.14.2.3	Requirements to avoid injury when carrying or		-	
	storing the cutting device			
	Every machine shall be provided with a cutting		Р	
	device carrier for storing and transporting the			
	cutting device.			



	EN 1672-1				
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict		
	The cutting device carrier shall protect persons		P		
	against contact with the cutting-edge and prevent				
	damage to the knifeedge during transport and				
	storing.				
	Long band cutting devices can be carried in a clip		Р		
	with the cutting edge turned away from the person				
	carrying the device. The manufacturer shall				
	provide the clip or clips for carrying the blade with				
	the machine.				
	Short band cutting devices shall be equipped with		Р		
	a cutting device carrier.				
5.14.3	Conveyors		-		
	Conveyors shall comply with the relevant safety		Р		
	requirements of EN 619 or EN 620. Where fixed or				
	interlocked guards are used to safeguard danger				
	zones on conveyors they shall comply with				
	5.2.1.3.				
6	Verification		-		
6.1	Introduction		-		
	Compliance with the requirements of Clause 5		Р		
	(and 7) shall be verified using the methods				
	described in this clause.				
	Where the criteria for acceptance are not		Р		
	self-evident, they can be found in Clause 5 (and 7)				
	or are indicated in this clause. See Table 4 for the				
	appropriate method of verification for each				
	requirement in Clause 5.				

Table 4 — Verification procedures for safety requirements identified in

Safety requirement	Visual inspection	Functional test	Measurement	Design Verification
-	ll food domooitore			Verification
Requirements for a	ii lood depositors			
5.2.1.2	$\sqrt{}$	$\sqrt{}$	$\sqrt{}$	$\sqrt{}$
5.2.1.3	V	$\sqrt{}$	$\sqrt{}$	√
5.2.1.4	\checkmark	\checkmark	$\sqrt{}$	√
5.2.1.5	$\sqrt{}$	$\sqrt{}$	$\sqrt{}$	√
5.2.1.6	V	V	V	√
5.2.2.1	V	$\sqrt{}$	V	√



EN 1672-1					
Clause	Requ	uirement – Test		Result	Verdict
5.2.2.2		V	V	V	V
5.2.2.3		V	V	√	√
5.2.3		V	V	√	√
5.2.4		V	√	√	√

Safety	Visual inspection	Functional test	Measurement	Design
requirement	Visual ilispection	i unctional test	Ivicasurement	Verification
5.2.5.1	•			•
5.2.5.2	•			•
5.2.5.3	•		•	•
5.2.6	•	•		•
5.3	•	•	•	
5.4		•	•	•
5.5		•		•
5.6		•	•	•
5.7		•	•	•
5.8	•	•	•	•
5.9	•	•	•	•
5.10	•	•	•	•
5.11	•	•	•	•
5.12	•	•	•	•
5.13	•	•	•	•
5.14.1	•	•	•	•
5.14.2	•	•	•	•
5.14.3	•	•	•	•

6.2	Visual inspections	-
6.2.1	Mechanical parts	-
	Check that all mechanical components are	Р
	securely fixed and all unnecessary sharp edges	
	have been removed.	
6.2.2	Guards	-
	Check that all guards are in place and securely	Р
	fixed.	
6.3	Function tests	-
6.3.1	Interlocking and protection devices	-



	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	Check the operation of all interlocking and		Р
	protection devices.		
	Check that following the operation of a device all		Р
	hazardous movements cease and that the		
	machine does not restart without resetting the		
	device and without an intentional start command.		
6.3.2	Stopping functions		-
	Check the operation of all stop and emergency		Р
	stop devices.		
	Check that following the operation of an		Р
	emergency stop all hazardous movements cease		
	and that the machine does not restart without		
	resetting the emergency stop device and without		
	an intentional start command.		
6.4	Measurements		-
6.4.1	Measurements with machine stopped		-
6.4.1.1	Guards		-
	Check the relationship between the size of any		Р
	openings in the guards and their distance from the		
	nearest danger zones conform to 5.2.2.1.2, 5.2.1.4		
	and 5.2.2.2.		
6.4.1.2	Electrical testing		-
	Electrical testing shall be carried out in		Р
	accordance with EN 60204-1:2006 Clause 18.		
	The following tests shall always be performed for		Р
	each individual machine when assembled and		
	finished:		
	- continuity of the protective bonding circuit;		Р
	- insulation resistance test;		Р
	- voltage test;		Р
	- function test.		Р
	In addition, for the type of machine, protection		Р
	against residual voltages shall, where applicable,		
	be tested, and it shall be verified that the electrical		
	equipment is in compliance with the technical		
	documentation.		



	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
6.4.2	Measurements with machine running		-
6.4.2.1	Noise emission		-
	The measurement and declaration of noise		Р
	emissions shall be carried out according to Annex		
	A.		
6.4.2.2	Temperature		-
	With the machine fully warmed up, measure the		Р
	temperature of touchable surfaces and follow the		
	requirements of 5.2.4.		
6.5	Design Verification		-
6.5.1	Guards		-
	Check with the machine running that the guards		Р
	conform to the safety requirements in Clause 5.		
6.5.2	Pneumatic systems		-
	Check that all pneumatic components and		Р
	pipe-work conform to safety requirements of EN		
	ISO 4414 and are		
	correctly installed.		
6.5.3	Hydraulic systems		-
	Check that all hydraulic components and		Р
	pipe-work conform to the safety requirements of		
	EN ISO 4413 and are correctly installed.		
6.5.4	Electrical equipment		-
	Check that the electrical equipment and		Р
	installation is in compliance with 5.3.		
6.6	Hazardous product and cleaning media		-
	related requirements		
6.6.1	Visual inspections before delivery		-
	Check that the design requirements for handling		Р
	the products or cleaning materials in question		
	have been followed.		
7	Information for use		-
7.1	General		-



Page 139th of 229

MD-TCF-230728-49218

1		
	In addition to the requirements of Clause 6.4 of EN	Р
	ISO 12100:2010 the following information for use	
	shall be provided by the manufacturer:	



EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
7.2	Signal and warning devices		Р
	Safety signs used on the machine shall comply with the principles of Clause 4.2.5 of EN 61310-1:2008.		Р
	The prohibition sign "do not reach in", illustrated in Figure 14, shall be used in the circumstances described in clause 5.2.1.4.		Р
			P
	Figure 14 — Prohibition symbol "Do not reach in"		-
	The pictogram "Caution, hot surface", illustrated in Figure 15, shall be used in the circumstances described in Clause 5.4.		Р
			P
	Figure 15 — Warning sign "Caution, hot surface"		-
	The pictogram "Caution cold surface", illustrated in Figure 16, shall be used in the circumstances described in clause 5.4.		Р



	EN 1672-1		
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict
	**		P
	Figure 16 — Warning sign "Caution, cold surface"		-
7.3	Accompanying documents		-
	In addition to the requirements of Clause 6.4.5 of EN ISO 12100:2010 the instruction handbook shall contain the following information.		Р
	a) an explanation of how the machine can be moved safely;		Р
	b) an indication of any special installation requirements to ensure that the machine is stable during operation, e.g. locking wheels or bolting feet to the floor;		P
	c) explicit instructions on the adjustment of guards or fitting of change part guards so that the machine is safe to use following a product change;		Р
	d) a statement of all parts of the machine which are likely to be hot enough (as defined by EN ISO 13732-1:2008) to cause burn injuries;		Р
	e) instructions for safe size changing and dismantling for cleaning including details of the mass of machine parts which must regularly be removed for size changing or cleaning;		Р
	f) where the machine is designed for low risk food products, but could be used in error for high risk food products, a statement of this limitation of use, e.g. "This machine has been designed to process low-risk food products and may not be suitable for use with high risk food products";		Р
	g) where there is a residual risk of products or		Р



	EN 1672-1			
Clause	Requirement – Test	Result	Verdict	
	liquids spilling onto the floor around the machine, a			
	statement of the importance of clearing these			
	spills to avoid slip hazards;			
	h) an indication of how the machine should be		Р	
	cleaned and disinfected and the cleaning media to			
	be used;			
	i) where the recommended cleaning substance is		Р	
	hazardous, the precautions to be taken by			
	operators when handling this substance and the			
	personal protection equipment that must be worn;			
	j) a statement of any restrictions on cleaning		Р	
	techniques,			
	e.g. "The electrical enclosures are protected to		Р	
	IP65, and so the machine should only be cleaned			
	using low pressure water";			
	k) where infrequent access is required to parts of		Р	
	the machine (see 5.2.14), an explanation of how			
	this can be done safely without the risk of slipping,			
	tripping and falling;			
	I) a record of the noise emissions from the		Р	
	machine as required by Annex A;			
	m) instructions for making the machine safe for		Р	
	interventions including disconnection of all power			
	supplies, methods of preventing reconnection to			
	power supplies, neutralising stored energy and			
	testing methods to verify that the machine is in a			
	safe state;			
	n) the operating method to be followed to enable		Р	
	the equipment to be safely unblocked after a			
	product blockage;			
	o) the specifications of the spare parts to be used,		Р	
	when these affect the health and safety of			
	operators.			
	On machines where there are hazards due to the		Р	
	emission of substances, information on the			
	required extraction or monitoring devices or the			
	provisions for such devices.			
	In cases, where this equipment is not provided by		P	
			<u>'</u>	



EN 1672-1 Clause Requirement – Test Result Verdict the manufacturer, a specification for the equipment that is required and details of how it should be used. Marking 7.4 Machines shall be marked visibly, legibly and Ρ indelibly with the following information: a) the business name and full address of the Р manufacturer and where applicable his authorised representative; b) designation of the machinery; Ρ c) the mandatory marking;1 Ρ d) designation of series or type; Ρ e) serial number (if any); Ρ f) the year of construction, i.e. the year in which Ρ the manufacturing process is completed; g) rating information; Ρ h) electrical markings as indicated in Clause 16 of Ρ EN 60204-1:2006. The machine parts that are intended to be moved Ρ by lifting equipment shall be legibly, indelibly and unambiguously marked with their mass.



Clause	Requirement – Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
4	List of significant hazards	result remark	Voluiot
			- P
	The significant hazards can arise from:		
	- biological causes such as pathogens, spoilage		P
	micro organisms, toxins or vermin;		
	 chemical causes including those from cleaning, 		Р
	disinfecting agents and lubricant substances;		
	- foreign bodies arising from raw materials,		Р
	machinery or other sources.		
	For each of these hazards there can be a risk		Р
	of contamination of the food and/or risks to the		
	health		
	of the consumer.		
	Microbiological hazards can cause spoilage of the		Р
	food, food poisoning or other related		
	illness in consumers.		
	Chemical hazards can cause contamination		Р
	or leave residues in the food causing injury to		
	health		
	(e.g. burns) or illness.		
	Foreign bodies can contaminate food and cause		Р
	physical injuries (e.g. choking, lacerations).		
	When considering the design of a machine it		Р
	is necessary to consider the implications of		
	any of the hazards and the measures		
	necessary to eliminate or reduce the hazard.		
	Informative Annex		
	C gives examples.		
5	Hygiene requirements		Р
5.1	Hygiene risk assessment		Р
5.1.1	General		Р



	The hazards shall be eliminated or the	Р
	associated risks reduced by ensuring	
	machinery is properly designed, constructed	
	and capable of being properly installed,	
	operated, cleaned and maintained.	
	The hygiene requirements of the different	Р
	areas of the equipment depend upon the	
	functions of the area, the type of food to be	
	processed and the nature of hazards to the	
	food.	
	In applying the design and construction	Р
	criteria the primary objective shall be to	
	eliminate or reduce the risks to an acceptable	
	level (see Figure 1).	
	The hygiene risk assessment follows the	Р
	methodology described in EN 1050.	
5.1.2	Determination of the limits of the machine	Р
	Risk assessment shall take into account:	Р

- the phases of machine life;	Р
- the limits of the machine (see 5.2 of EN ISO	Р
12100-1:2003) including the intended use	
(both the correct use and operation of the	
machinery as well as the consequences of	
reasonably foreseeable misuse or	
malfunction) in accordance with 3.22 of EN	
ISO 12100-1:2003, for example:	
will the machine be used for one specific	Р
purpose only, for which hazards are readily	
identifiable, or could the machine be used for	
a wide range of food products in many	
industries (e.g. a pump)?;	



	- the full range of foreseeable uses of the		Р
	machinery (e.g. industrial, non-industrial and		
	domestic) by persons identified by sex, age,		
	dominant hand usage, or limiting physical		
	abilities (e.g. visual or hearing impairment,		
	size, strength);		
	- the anticipated level of training, experience		Р
	or ability of the foreseeable users.		
5.1.3	Hygiene risk estimation		Р
	The estimation of the hygiene risk by the		Р
	manufacturer shall be related to the three		
	significant hazards defined in Clause 4 and		
	restricted to the hazards caused by the		
	intended use of the machine, as defined in		
	3.22 of EN ISO 12100-1:2003:		
	- estimate the severity of the possible harm		Р
	from the considered hazard;		
	- estimate the probability of the occurrence of		Р
	that harm from the considered hazard: see		
	example below.		
	EXAMPLE		Р
	When all hygienic hazards are identified, they		Р
	can be scored, one by one, with the help of		
	the Figure 2.		
	The questions to raise are:		Р
	1 – Does the hazard have a low, medium or		Р
	high impact if it occurs?		
	2 – Is the probability of occurrence that the		Р
	hazard occurs low, medium or high?		
		•	



	Figure 2 — Example of tool for the risk estimation - Risk ranking diagram	Р
	NOTE It is recommended to make or realise the estimation with a team rather than by one person only.	P
5.1.4	Hygiene risk evaluation	Р
	After hygiene risk estimation, hygiene risk evaluation shall be carried out to determine if hygiene risk reduction is required or whether food safety has been achieved by reducing risks to an acceptable level.	P
	If hygiene risk reduction is required, then appropriate food safety measures shall be selected and applied, and the procedure repeated (see Figure 1). During this iterative process, it is important for the designer to check whether additional hazards are created when new food safety measures are applied.	P
	If additional hazards are identified, they shall be added to the list of identified hazards.	Р
	The achievement of the hygiene risk reduction objectives and a favourable outcome of risk comparison give confirmation that the machinery is safe.	P
5.1.5	Hygiene risk reduction	Р
	Achievement of the following conditions shall indicate the satisfactory hygiene risk reduction process:	P
	- the hazard has been eliminated or the hygiene risk reduced by:	Р
	a) design or by the substitution of less hazardous materials and substances;	Р
	b) safeguarding the hygienic conditions;	Р



- the information on the intended use of the	Р
machinery is sufficiently clear (see Clause 7)	
when:	
a) the operating procedures for the use of the	Р
machinery are consistent with the ability of	
personnel who use the machinery or other	
persons who can introduce hazards to the	
food;	
b) the recommended hygienic working	Р
practices for the use of the machinery and the	
related	

	training requirements have been adequately	
	described;	
	c) the user is sufficiently informed about	P
	hazards occurring during the different phases	
	of the life of the machinery;	
	d) the use of personal protective equipment is	Р
	recommended, the need for such equipment	
	and the training requirements for its use have	
	been adequately described.	
5.2	Materials of construction	P
5.2.1	General requirements	Р
	Materials shall be suitable for intended use.	Р
	Surfaces of materials and coatings shall be	Р
	durable, cleanable and where required	
	capable of being disinfected, without breaks,	
	resistant to cracking, chipping, flaking and	
	abrasion and prevent penetration of	
	unwanted matter under intended use.	
5.2.2	Food area	Р
	In addition to the general requirements (see	Р
	5.2.1), under intended conditions of use, the	
	materials shall be:	



	- corrosion resistant;		Р
	- non toxic;		Р
	- non absorbent (except when technically or		Р
	functionally unavoidable).		
	The materials shall:		Р
	- not transfer undesirable odours, colours or		Р
	taint to the food;		
	- not contribute either to the contamination of		Р
	food or have any adverse influence on the		
	food.		
5.3	Design		Р
5.3.1	Food area		Р
5.3.1.1	Surfaces		Р
	Surface finish shall be suitable for intended		Р
	use.		
	Surfaces shall be cleanable and where		Р
	required capable of being disinfected. For this		
	purpose they shall be smooth, continuous or		
	sealed.		
	The surface design and finish shall be such		Р
	that the product is prevented as far as		
	possible from becoming accidentally		
	separated from the food area and from		
	returning to it, if that return would		
	cause a hazard to the processed food.		
	Surfaces shall have a finish so that no particle		Р
	of		
	product becomes trapped in small crevices,		
	thus becoming difficult to dislodge and so		
	introduce a contamination hazard.		
	These above requirements also apply to		Р
	dismountable parts, which are removable for		
	cleaning.		
L	I .	1	-



	NOTE Guidance for measurement of surface finish (roughness specification Rz and/or Ra)	Р
	can be found in	
	EN ISO 4288.	
	Additional requirements for surface finish can	Р
	be found in some machinery specific type C	
	standards.	
5.3.1.2	Joints	Р
5.3.1.2.1	Permanent joints	Р
	Joints shall be sealed and hygienic.	Р
	Recesses, gaps, crevices, protruding ledges,	
	inside shoulders and dead spaces shall be	
	avoided (see Figures A.3, A.4 and A.5).	
	If technically impossible, adequate solutions	Р
	(e.g. cleaning, disinfection, instructions, etc.)	
	shall be given.	
5.3.1.2.2	Dismountable joints	Р
	Dismountable joints shall present a true and	Р
	hygienic fit (see Figures A.6, A.7, A.8 and	
	A.9).	
5.3.1.3	Fasteners	Р
	Fasteners such as screws, bolts, rivets and	Р
	so on, shall be avoided If technically	
	impossible adequate solutions (e.g. cleaning,	
	disinfection, instructions,	
	etc.) shall be given (see Figure A.10).	
5.3.1.4	Drainage	Р
	It shall be ensured that the machinery is	 Р
	preferably self draining, or that the residual	
	liquid can be removed by other means (see	
	Figures A.11, A.12 and A.13).	
5.3.1.5	Internal angles and corners	Р



	Internal angles and corners shall be so	Р
	constructed that they are effectively cleanable	
	and where required capable of being	
	disinfected (see Figure A.14).	
	Internal angles and corners shall comply with	Р
	technical requirements which are given in	
	machinery specific C standards.	
5.3.1.6	Dead spaces	Р
	Dead spaces shall be avoided unless	Р
	technically impossible in the design,	
	construction and	

		1	
	installation of the machinery (see Figures		
	A.15 and A.16).		
	Dead spaces, which are unavoidable, shall be		Р
	constructed in such a way that they are		
	drainable/cleanable and capable of being		
	disinfected, where required.		
5.3.1.7	Bearings and shaft entry points		Р
	Bearings shall be either located outside of the		Р
	food area except where this is technically		
	unavoidable, or designed for and lubricated		
	with food grade lubricant, cleanable and		
	where required capable of		
	being disinfected (see Figures A.17 and		
	A.18).		
	Shaft seals and moving shafts in the food		Р
	area shall be self (or product)-lubricated or		
	should be designed for and lubricated with		
	food grade lubricant, cleanable and, where		
	required, capable of being disinfected.		
	NOTE Requirements for equipment used in		Р
	aseptic processing may be found in specific C		
	standards.		
5.3.1.8	Instrumentation and sampling devices		Р



	Instrumentation and sampling devices shall	Р
	comply with the relevant sections of this	
	Clause 5 (see Figures A.19, A.20 and A.21).	
5.3.1.9	Panels, covers, doors	Р
	These parts shall be so designed that they	Р
	avoid any adverse influence (e.g. entry and/or	
	accumulation of any soil) and shall be	
	cleanable and, where required, capable of	
	being disinfected.	
5.3.1.10	Control devices	Р
	If there is no manual contact with the food,	Р
	these items or areas of machinery which are	
	handled for control reasons by the operator,	
	shall be considered as non food areas.	
	In case of manual contact with the food,	Р
	where cross contamination can occur these	
	areas or items shall be covered by the	
	definition of a food area (see 3.4.1).	
5.3.2	Splash area	Р
	The splash area shall be designed and	Р
	constructed following the same principles for	
	the food area.	
	As the food does not return to the food area,	Р
	the technical design criteria may be less	
	stringent than in the food area in areas such	
	as the following	
	provided that there is no adverse effect on the	
	food:	
		1_

provided that there is no adverse effect on the	
food:	
- technical requirements for surface finish	Р
may allow for higher Rz and/or Ra values;	
- internal angles and corners may be of	Р
smaller radius, provided they are still	
cleanable and, where required, capable of	
being disinfected;	



	and/or measures	
J		'
6	Verification of hygiene requirements	Р
	4.	
	not introduce any hazard as defined in Clause	
	where they are situated, and	
	5.3.1, 5.3.2 and 5.3.3, according to the area	
	machinery shall meet the requirements of	
	devices forming an integral part of the	
0.0.4	Services, pipes, connections and related	Р
5.3.4	Services	Р
	totally closed or effectively sealed.	
	framing shall be	
	and, where required, disinfection. Tubular	
	and accumulation of soils, and to facilitate inspection, servicing, maintenance, cleaning	
	moisture, ingress and harbourage of vermin	
	in such a manner to prevent the retention of	
	Equipment shall be designed and constructed	P
	the food.	D
	shall not contaminate or have any adverse influence on	
	required, capable of being disinfected and	
	These surfaces shall be cleanable and, where	P
	corrosion resistant.	
	painted) so as to be	
	material or material that is treated (coated or	
	area shall be made of corrosion resistant	
	5.2.1) exposed surfaces used in the non-food	
	In addition to the general requirements (see	P
5.3.3	Non food area	Р
	Regarding fasteners see the Figure A.22.	Р
	no adverse influence on the food.	
	non-food grade lubricants, provided there is	
	in a splash area, may be lubricated by	
	- bearings, seals, moving shafts, etc., located	P



Verification of compliance with hygienic	Р
requirements shall be undertaken using one	
or more of the verification methods given in	
Table 1.	
Table 1 — Hygiene requirements and	Р
verification	

5.1	Hygiene risk assessment	Documentary
		evidence
5.2.1	Durable	Material
		specification (food,
		process and
		cleaning
		specifications, etc.)
		and/or practical or
		functional test
5.2.1	Cleanable and/or capable of being	Visual inspection (of
5.3.1.1	disinfected	technical drawing
5.3.1.3		and/or machinery)
5.3.1.5		and/or practical test,
5.3.1.6		micro biological test
5.3.1.7		or functional test
5.3.1.9		
5.3.2 5.3.3		
5.2.2 5.3.3	Corrosion resistant	Material
		specification (food,
		process and
		cleaning
		specifications, etc.)
		and/or practical or
		functional test



5.2.2	Non toxic	Material specification or practical test for materials and articles intended to come into contact with food
5.2.2	Non absorbent	Material specification or practical test for materials and articles intended to come into contact with food
5.2.2	Not transfer undesirable colours or taint to the food odours,	Material specification or practical test for materials and articles intended to come into contact with food
5.2.2 5.3.3	Not contribute either to the contamination of food or have any adverse influence on the food	Material specification or practical test for materials and articles intended to come into contact with food
5.3.1.1	Surface design	Visual inspection (of technical drawing and/or machinery)



5.3.1.1 5.3.2	Surface finish	Measuring e.g. according to EN ISO 4288 For criteria of acceptability see also machine specific C standards if
		available
5.3.1.2.1	Permanent joints	Visual inspection
5.3.1.2.2	Dismountable joints	Visual inspection
5.3.1.3	Fasteners	Visual inspection
5.3.1.4 5.3.1.6 5.3.3	Drainage	Visual inspection (of technical drawing and/or machinery) and practical tests
5.3.1.5 5.3.2	Internal angles and corners	Measurements
5.3.1.6	Dead spaces	Visual inspection
5.3.1.7	Bearings and shaft entry points	Visual inspection
5.3.1.9	Panels, covers, doors	Visual inspection
5.3.1.10	Control devices	Visual inspection
5.3.2	Splash area	Compliance with Reference subclauses in left-hand boxes
5.3.3	Non-food area	Compliance with Reference subclauses in left-hand boxes
5.3.4	Services	Compliance with Reference subclauses in left-hand boxes



7	Information for use	Р
7.1	General	Р
	The intended use of the food machinery and	Р
	its limits shall be specified in the information	
	for use provided by the manufacturer.	
	In relation to risks that cannot be eliminated,	Р
	users shall be informed of any measures that	
	they shall comply with, including the need for	
	any particular training.	
	Information for use shall meet the	Р
	requirements of Clause 6 of EN ISO	
	12100-2:2003.	
7.2	Instruction handbook	Р
7.2.1	General	Р
	An instruction handbook shall be provided by	Р
	the manufacturer and meet the requirements	
	and advice of 6.5 of EN ISO 12100-2:2003. It	
	shall	

	include specific additional information related to the following points:	
7.2.2	Information relating to installation	Р
	In particular:	Р
	- space needed for use and maintenance, for	
	example measures to be taken when	
	installing machinery.	
	Care shall be taken to ensure that there is	Р
	adequate access for servicing machinery and	
	cleaning service systems and their adjacent	
	areas so that the required level of hygiene	
	can be	
	maintained;	



	- permissible environmental operating	Р
	conditions and in addition, where required,	
	measures to be taken so that the food is not	
	adversely influenced by for example air	
	currents, dust or liquids derived	
	from leakage, condensation or aerosols.	
7.2.3	Information relating to the machine itself	Р
	Specific instructions for the intended use (see	Р
	5.1.5) shall be included.	
7.2.4	Information relating to cleaning and	Р
	disinfection	
	The instruction handbook shall indicate the	Р
	recommended cleaning and disinfecting	
	agents and instructions for dismantling (if	
	necessary), cleaning, disinfection, rinsing and	
	inspection for	
	cleanliness.	
	The method and frequency of cleaning	Р
	various surfaces including dismountable parts	
	is dependant on the food product processed	
	and the	
	associated relevant hazard.	
7.2.5	Information relating to maintenance	Р
	A scheme shall comprise a system of	Р
	measures to ensure required level of hygiene	
	is maintained for	
	food machinery within specified intervals.	
	If food grade lubricants are required they shall	Р
	be	
	specified.	
7.3	Marking	Р
	No specific marking within the scope of this	Р
	document is necessary.	
	uddament ie nedeesary.	



3.2 Airborne noise Report

I. Applicable standards

- EN ISO 3744:2010 Acoustics Determination of sound power levels and sound energy levels
 of noise sources using sound pressure Engineering methods for an essentially free field over
 a reflecting plane.
- 2. EN ISO 11202: Acoustics-Noise emitted by machinery and equipment-Measurement of emission sound pressure levels at the work station and at other specified positions-Survey method in situ.
- 3. ISO/TR 11688-1: Acoustics-Recommended practice for the design of low-noise machinery and equipment -Part 1: Planning.

II. Review instrument

The sound level meter used in the noise measurement is TES1350A manufactured by TES Electrical Electronic Corp. with the following features

- Portable with light weight easy operation.
- Measurement range from 35 to 130 dBA.
- Type 1 precision.
- With "F"&"S" detect mode in accordance with IEC 651 type 1.
- Built in A-weighting network.
- Equipped with a high prepoarized condenser microphone.
- With automatic&manual display.
- DC output for level recorder.

III. Measurement method

The measurements of this review have been carried out by a hand-held sound level meter, and readings are taken by A-frequency weighting at each measuring position.

For operator positions in process of measurement, the measuring instrument is to be set at a distance of 1 m from the machine and 1.5 m above the floor.

IV. Review environment

The review was carried out in the location of machine inside the factory, and the background noise has been ensured that its measuring value is lower than that of machine.



V. Review result

1. Sound pressure level (machine on "Stand by" and normal load condition)

٠.	Courta procedio io	101 (11140111110	on otana by	and monnan	oaa oonanan	,	
	Position	1	2	3	4	5	Ì
	Reading (dB (A))	69.2	68.3	69.3	69.8	68.7	

2. Sound pressure level (machine on full load condition)

Position	1	2	3	4	5
Reading (dB (A))	78.5	78.8	77.4	77.6	78.6

The following is the calculation formula of Lw (Sound power level):

$$Lw = Lpf + 10 \times log (S/S_o)$$

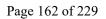
- \cdot Lpf is the A-weighted or frequency bank surface sound pressure level \cdot S is the area of the measurement surface in square meters20 m^2
- \cdot S⁰ is 1 m²

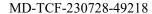


3.3 EN 60204-1 Report

EN 60204-1:2018 Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: General requirements

MD-TCF-230728-49218
July 31,2023
61
Shanghai Global Testing Services Co., Ltd.
Floor 2nd, Building D-1, No. 128, Shenfu Road, Minhang District, Shanghai, China
Resaeng co., Itd
401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea
Resaeng co., Itd
401,22,Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea
EN 60204-1:2018
СВ
N/A
IEC60204_1A
GTS
Dated 2019-11
Mega Reencle







Model/Type reference.....: RSV2B / RSV2B-1 / RSV2B-2 / RSV2B-3

RSV2C / RSV2C-1 / RSV2C-2 / RSV2C-3

RSV2D / RSV2D-1 / RSV2D-2 / RSV2D-3 / RSV2D-R

HMV2D / HMV2D-1 / HMV2D-2 / HMV2D-3



Revi	Reviewing procedure and Reviewing location:				
X	Reviewing procedure: TMP				
	Reviewed by (name + signature)				
	Approved by (+ signature)				
Revie	ewing location/ address:	Floor 2nd, Building D-1, No. 128, Shenfu Road, Minhang District, Shanghai, China			
	Reviewing procedure: WMT				
	Reviewed by (name + signature)				
	Witnessed by (+ signature)				
	Approved by (+ signature)				
Revie	ewing location/ address:				
	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
	Reviewing procedure: SMT				
	Reviewed by (name + signature)				
	Approved by (+ signature)				
	Supervised by (+ signature)				
Revie	ewing location/ address::				
	Reviewing procedure: RMT				
	Reviewed by (name + signature)				
	Approved by (+ signature)				
	Supervised by (+ signature)				
Revie	ewing location/ address:				



Summary of Reviewing:			
Reviews performed (name of Review and Review clause):	Reviewing location:		
All of Review are performed at:	Floor 2nd, Building D-1, No. 128, Shenfu Road, Minhang District, Shanghai, China		
Floor 2nd, Building D-1, No. 128, Shenfu Road, Minhang District, Shanghai, China	Willinary District, Shanghai, China		
Summary of compliance with National Difference	ces:		
N/A			
Copy of marking plate			



Review item particulars.....:

Classification of installation and use.....: Class I

Supply Connection...... Terminal

Possible Review case verdicts:

- Review case does not apply to the Review object : N/A

- Review object does meet the requirement.....: Pass

- Review object does not meet the requirement......: Fail

Reviewing.....:

General remarks:

The review results presented in this report relate only to the objec reviewed.

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of the Issuing reviewing laboratory.

"(see Enclosure #)" refers to additional information appended to the report.

"(see appended table)" refers to a table appended to the report.

Throughout this report a comma (point) is used as the decimal separator.

This review report include:

Attachment to review Report IEC60204-1, 2 page(s)



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
4	GENERAL REQUIREMENTS		_
4.1	General		
	Hazards relevant to the electrical equipment are assessed as part of the overall risk assessment of the machine as described		Р
4.2	Selection of equipment		
4.2.1	Electrical components and devices shall be: - suitable for their intended use - conform to IEC standards where such exist - be applied in accordance with supplier's instructions	suitable for their intended use	Р
4.2.2	Where appropriate electrical equipment in compliance with IEC 61439 series	See the electrical components list.	Р
4.3	Electrical supply		_
4.3.1	Electrical equipment to be designed for correct operation within the conditions of mains power supply		Р
	- as stated below (4.3.2 or 4.3.3)	See nameplate	Р
	- or as specified by the user		N/A
	- or as specified by the supplier (4.3.4)		N/A
4.3.2	AC supplies		Р
	Supply Voltage: Steady state voltage: 0.91.1 of nominal voltage	See nameplate	Р
	Frequency: 0.991.01 of nominal frequency continuously; 0.981.02 short time.	See nameplate	Р
	Harmonics: not exceeding 12 % of the total r.m.s. etc.		Р
	Voltage unbalance: not exceeding 2% deviation		Р
	Voltage interruption: interrupted or at zero voltage for not more than 3 ms at any random time in the supply cycle with more than 1 s between successive interruptions		Р
	Voltage dips not exceeding 20 % of the rms voltage of the supply for more than one cycle with more than 1 s between successive dips		Р
4.3.3	DC supplies		N/A



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	Supply voltage: - batteries: 0.85 – 1.15 of nominal voltage - battery-operated vehicles: 0.7 – 1.2 of nom. volt from converting equipment: 0.9 – 1.1 of nom. volt.		N/A
	Voltage interruption: - batteries: not exceeding 5 ms - converting equipment: not exceeding 20 ms		N/A
	Ripple (peak-to-peak): not exceed. 0.15 of nom. volt.		N/A
4.3.4	Special supply systems (e.g. on-board generators, DC bus) limits acc. 4.3.2 /.3 may be exceeded, provided equipment is designed accordingly		N/A
4.4	Physical environment and operating conditions		_
4.4.1	Electrical equipment suitable for the physical environment and operating conditions of its intended use.	Detail in the instruction manual.	Р
4.4.2	Immunity and/or emission tests required unless	DoC	Р
	incorporated devices and components comply with the relevant product standard and		Р
	- installation and wiring according supplier instructions or Annex H:		Р
4.4.3	Electrical equipment shall be capable of operating correctly in the intended ambient air temperature. (Minimum requirement: air temperatures of +5 °C and +40 °C)	See the instruction manual.	Р
4.4.4	Electrical equipment shall be capable of operating correctly when the relative humidity is up to 50 % at a maximum temperature of +40 °C	See the instruction manual.	Р
	Harmful effects of condensation shall be avoided		Р
4.4.5	Electrical equipment shall be capable of operating correctly at altitudes up to 1 000 m above mean sea level	See the instruction manual.	Р
	For equipment to be used at higher altitudes the reduction of dielectric strength, switching capability and cooling effects shall be taken into account		Р
4.4.6	Electrical equipment shall be adequately protected against the ingress of solids and liquids (see 11.3)	Electrical cabinet has been complied with.	Р
4.4.7	When equipment is subjected to radiation, additional measures shall be taken		N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
4.4.8	Undesirable effects of vibration, shock and bump avoided by suitable mans		Р
4.5	Electrical equipment designed to withstand the effects of transportation and storage within a temperature range of - 25 to + 55 °C	See the instruction manual.	Р
4.6	Heavy or bulky electrical equipment of the machine provided with suitable means for handling		Р
5	INCOMING SUPPLY CONDUCTOR TERMINATIONS DISCONNECTING AND SWITCHING OFF	AND DEVICES FOR	_
5.1	Incoming supply conductor terminations		_
	Recommendation that electrical equipment of a machine is connected to a single supply (For large complex machinery, there can be a need for more than one incoming supply)	See nameplate	Р
	Unless a plug is provided, supply conductors should be terminated at the supply disconnecting device	The main power switch has been provided in the machine.	Р
	Neutral conductor clearly indicated in technical documentation with "N" (see cl. 16.1)		Р
	A separate terminal, labelled N provided (it may be part of the supply disconnecting device)		Р
	No connection between neutral conductor and protective bonding circuit	No connection between N and PE.	Р
	Exception: a connection may be made between the neutral terminal and the PE terminal at the point of the connection of the electrical equipment to a TN-C supply system.		Р
	For machines supplied from parallel sources the requirements of IEC 60364-1 apply		Р
	All terminals of incoming supply clearly marked in ac. with IEC 60445)		Р
5.2	Terminal for connection of external protective conductor (PE)		_
	For each incoming supply, a terminal shall be provided in the same compartment as the line conductor terminals for connection to the external protective conductor	There is PE terminal for the earthling system.	Р
	Terminal size according to table 1 in relation to the line conductors	This requirement has been complied with.	Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	Where an external protective conductor other than copper is used, the terminal size and type shall be selected accordingly		P	
	At each incoming point this terminal shall be marked or labelled with the letters PE		Р	
5.3	Supply disconnecting device		_	
5.3.1	A supply disconnecting device shall be provided: - for each incoming supply to a machine - for each on-board power supply	provided	Р	
	Where two or more such devices exist, interlocks shall be provided to prevent hazardous situations		Р	
5.3.2	The supply disconnecting device shall be one of the	following:	_	
	a) a switch-disconnector, acc. to IEC 60947-3 for at least appliance category AC-23 B or DC-23 B		N/A	
	b) a control and protective switching device suitable for insulation acc. to IEC 60947-6-2		N/A	
	c) a circuit-breaker suitable for isolation (acc. to IEC 60947-2)		Р	
	d) any other switching device in accordance with an IEC product standard for that device and which meets the isolation requirements and the appropriate utilization category and/or specified endurance requirements		N/A	
	e) a plug/socket combination for a flexible cable supply		N/A	
5.3.3	A disconnection device acc. to 5.3.2 a) to d) has to ful requirements	fil all of the following	_	
	- isolate the electrical equipment from the supply and have one OFF (isolated) and one ON position marked with "O" and "I"		Р	
	- have a visible contact gap or a position indicator which cannot indicate OFF (isolated) until all contacts are actually open and the requirements for the isolating function have been satisfied		Р	
	- have an operating means (see 5.3.4)		Р	
	- coloured black or grey recommended (If used as an emergency stop, red/yellow combination selected)		Р	



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	- be provided with a means permitting it to be locked in the OFF position (padlocks). When so locked, remote as well as local closing shall be prevented		Р
	- disconnect all live conductors of its power supply circuit For TN supply systems, the neutral conductor may or may not be disconnected except in countries where disconnection of the neutral conductor (when used) is compulsory		P
	- have a braking capacity to interrupt the system, when the largest motor is stalled		Р
	A plug/socket combination used as a disconnection device shall: -comply with 13.4.5 -have a braking capacity to interrupt the system, when the largest motor is stalled		N/A
5.3.4	Operating means of supply disconnecting devices (e.g. a handle) shall be external to the enclosure	Meet requirements	Р
	Exception: for power-operated switchgear this can be some other means (e.g. pushbutton) instead of a handle		Р
	The operating means shall be easily accessible and located between 0,6 m and 1,9 m above the servicing level (upper limit of 1,7 m is recommended)		Р
	Where intended for emergency operation, see 10.7.3 or 10.8.3		Р
	Where not intended for emergency operation - the colours black or grey are recommended - a supplementary cover or door that can be readily opened without a key or tool may be provided. It shall clearly show its function, e.g. by relevant symbols		Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	,			
5.3.5	The following circuits need not be disconnected by the supply disconnecting device: - lighting circuits for lighting needed during maintenance or repair; - socket outlets for the exclusive connection of repair or maintenance tools and equipment; - undervoltage protection circuits that are only provided for automatic tripping in the event of supply failure; - circuits supplying equipment that should normally remain energized for correct operation Such circuits should be provided with their own disconnecting device.		Э	
	Where expected circuits are not disconnected by the	supply disconnecting device:	_	
	- permanent warning labels shall be placed close to the operating means	No this parts	N/A	
	- a statement shall be included in the maintenance manual and		N/A	
	-the conductors are identified by colour, taking into account the recommendation of Cl.13.2.4, or -expected circuits are separated from other circuits, or -expected circuits are identified by permanent warning labels		N/A	
5.4	Devices for removal of power for prevention of un	nexpected start-up	_	
	Devices for removal of power for the prevention of unexpected start-up shall be provided where this can create a hazard	The function has been achieved.	Р	
	They shall be appropriate and convenient for the intended use, suitably placed, and readily identifiable as to their function and purpose	The means have been provided.	Р	
	Where not obvious, they shall be marked to indicate the extent of removal of power		Р	
	Devices in accordance with 5.3.2 may be used for this purpose		Р	
	Disconnectors, withdrawable fuse links and withdrawable links only used, if located in enclosed electrical operator area (see 3.1.23)		Р	



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	Devices that do not fulfil the isolation function (e.g. a contactor switched off by a control circuit etc.) only used for tasks such as: - inspections; - adjustments; - work on the electrical equipment where there are only minor risks (as described)	This does not exist.	N/A
5.5	Devices for isolating electrical equipment		
	Devices shall be provided for isolating electrical equipment or parts of it to enable work	These requirements have been complied with.	Р
	Such devices shall be: -appropriate and convenient for the intended use; -suitably placed; -readily identifiable as to which part or circuit of the equipment is served. They shall be marked unless their function and purpose is obvious		Р
	Where it is necessary to work on individual parts of the electrical equipment of a machine, or on one of a number of machines fed by a common conductor bar, conductor wire or inductive power supply system, a disconnecting device is provided for each part, or for each machine, requiring separate isolation	No this situation in the machine	N/A
	In addition, the following devices that fulfil the isolation function may be provided for this purpose: - devices described in 5.3.2; - disconnectors, withdrawable fuse links and withdrawable links only used, if located in enclosed electrical operator area (see 3.1.23) and information provided (see cl 17)		N/A
5.6	Protection against unauthorized, inadvertent and	or mistaken connection	_
	Where devices acc. to cl. 5.4 and 5. are located outside an enclosed electrical operator area, locking means in OFF position shall be provided When so secured, local and remote reconnection shall be prevented	See the 5.3.3.	Р
	Where these devices are located inside an enclosed electrical operator area, other means of protection against unintended reconnection can be sufficient	Not applicable.	N/A
	Where a plug/socket combinations is so positioned that it can be kept under the immediate supervision of the person carrying out the work, means for securing in the disconnected state are not needed	Not applicable.	N/A



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
6	PROTECTION AGAINST ELECTRIC SHOCK			
		I	_	
6.1	The electrical equipment shall provide protection against electric shock by basic protection and fault protection	Bonding	Р	
	Where the measures for protection as in 6.2, 6.3 and 6.4 are not practicable, other measures from IEC 60364-4-41 may be used (e.g. SELV)		Р	
6.2	Basic protection		_	
6.2.1	For each circuit the measures of 6.2.2, 6.2.3 and, where applicable, 6.2.4 shall apply		Р	
	Where not appropriate, other measures as defined in IEC 60364-4-41 may be applied (see also 6.2.5 and 6.2.6)		Р	
	For equipment in places open to all persons including children, 6.2.2 with a minimum protection of IP4X or IPXXD, or 6.2.3 shall be applied		Р	
6.2.2	Live parts shall be located inside enclosures that provide protection against contact with live parts of at least IP2X or IPXXB.	The cabinet is IP32	Р	
	Where the top surfaces of the enclosure are readily accessible, the minimum degree of protection against contact with live parts provided by the top surfaces shall be IP4X or IPXXD.		Р	
	Opening an enclosure (i.e. opening doors, lids, covers, under one of the following conditions:	etc) shall be possible only	_	
	a) The use of a key or tool is necessary for access All live parts (including those on the inside of doors) likely to be touched when resetting or adjusting devices intended for such operations while the equipment is still connected, are protected against contact to at least IP2X or IPXXB Other live parts on the inside of doors are protected against unintentional direct contact to at least IP1X or IPXXA.	The all requirements have been complied with by a main power switch, detail see the 5.3.3 and the 6.2.2.		



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	'		•
	b) The disconnection of live parts inside the enclosure before it can be opened (see explanation) Exception: a key or tool as prescribed by the supplier can be used to defeat the interlock, provided that the following conditions are met: - it is possible at all times while the interlock is defeated to open the disconnecting device and lock the disconnecting device in the OFF position or otherwise prevent unauthorised closure of the disconnecting device; - upon closing the door, the interlock is automatically restored - all live parts (), likely to be touched are protected against unintentional contact to at least IP2X or IPXXB and other live parts on the inside of doors shall be protected against unintentional contact to at least IP1X or IPXXA - relevant information about the procedure for the defeat of the interlock is provided with the instructions for use of the electrical equipment - means are provided to restrict access to live parts behind doors that are not directly interlocked with the disconnecting means to skilled or instructed persons All parts still alive after switching off the disconnecting device shall be protected against direct contact to at least IP 2X or IP XXB and be marked with a warning sign in accordance with 16.2.1 except for: - parts that can be live only because of connection to interlocking circuits and that are distinguished by colour as potentially live in accordance with 13.2.4 - the supply terminals of the supply disconnecting device when the latter is mounted alone in a separate enclosure	See above	N/A
	c) Opening without the use of a key or a tool and without disconnection of live parts shall be possible only when all live parts are protected against contact to at least IP2X or IPXXB. Where barriers provide this protection, either they shall require a tool for their removal or all live parts protected by them shall be automatically disconnected when the barrier is removed. Where a hazard can be caused by manual action of devices (), such action shall be prevented by barriers or obstacles that require a tool for their removal	See above	N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
6.2.3	Live parts protected by insulation shall be completely covered with insulation that can only be removed by destruction and that is capable of withstanding the mechanical, chemical, electrical, and thermal stresses to which it can be subjected under normal operating conditions	The live parts have been completely covered.	p
	Note: Paint, varnish lacquer etc. alone are generally considered inadequate		N/A
6.2.4	Live parts having a residual voltage greater than 60 V when disconnected, shall be discharged to 60 V or less within 5 s, if this does not interfere with the proper functioning of the equipment	The residual voltage has been complied with the machine.	Р
	Exempted are components having stored charges of 60 μ C or less		Р
	Where not possible , an appropriate warning shall be placed according to the details given		Р
	In case of pins of plugs etc. the discharge time shall not exceed 1s. Otherwise such conductors shall be protected to at least IP2X or IPXXB.		Р
	If above requirements cannot be achieved, additional disconnecting devices or appropriate warning devices shall be provided		N/A
	When equipment is accessible to all persons incl. children, warnings are not sufficient and a protection of IP4X or IPXXD is required		N/A
6.2.5	For protection by barriers, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 shall apply (412.2)		N/A
6.2.6	For protection by placing out of reach or protection by obstacles, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 shall apply (412.4 and 412.3)		N/A
	For conductor wire or bar systems with less than IP2X or IPXXB, see 12.7.1		N/A
6.3	Fault protection		_
6.3.1	For each circuit or part of el. equipment at least one of shall be applied:	the measures of 6.3.2 to 6.3.3	
	-Prevention of the occurrence of a touch voltage	Protection earthing	Р
	-Protection by automatic disconnection of supply	Circuit breaker and/or fuse	Р
6.3.2	Prevention of the occurrence of a touch voltage		_



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
6.3.2.1	Measures to prevent the occurrence of a touch voltagent provision of class II equipment or by equivalent insulation electrical separation		T -
6.3.2.2	Protection by provision of one or more of the following	g:	_
	- class II electrical devices or apparatus (double insulation, reinforced insulation or by equivalent insulation in accordance with IEC 61140) or		N/A
	- switchgear and control gear assemblies having total insulation in accordance with IEC 61439-1or	Meet requirements	Р
	- supplementary or reinforced insulation in accordance with IEC 60364-4-41(413.2)		N/A
6.3.2.3	For protection by electrical separation the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply (413.5)		N/A
6.3.3	Protection by automatic disconnection of supply		_
	This measure consists of the interruption of one or more line conductors in a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems		Р
	This requires co-ordination between: -the type of supply, the source impedance and the earthing system -several impedance values -characteristics of protective devices -(For details see 18.2)		Р
	This protective measure comprises both:		_
	-protective bonding of exposed parts (8.2.3)		Р
	one of the following:		_
	a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used:	The overcurrent protective device has been provided.	_
	•overcurrent protective device or		Р
	residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices		Р
	b) In TT systems either:		
	RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices or		N/A
	overcurrent protective devices provided a low fault loop impedance is assured		N/A



	IEC 60204-1				
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict		
		1			
	c) In IT-Systems the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 shall be fulfilled		_		
	During an insulation fault an acoustic and an optical signal shall be sustained. The acoustic signal may manually be muted		N/A		
	Where automatic disconnection is provided under a) and disconnection acc. to A.1.1 cannot be assured, supplementary protective bonding shall be provided to fulfil A.1.3		N/A		
	Where protection of a PDS (power drive system) is not provided by the converter, the necessary protection shall be acc. to the converter manufacturer's instructions		N/A		
6.4	Protection by the use of PELV —		_		
6.4.1	PELV circuits shall satisfy all of the following condition	ons:	_		
	a) the nominal voltage does not exceed: -25 V AC r.m.s. or 60 V ripple-free AC when the equipment is normally used in dry locations and when large area contact of live parts with the human body is not expected; or -6 V AC r.m.s. or 15 V ripple-free DC in all other cases;		N/A		
	b) one side of the circuit or one point of the source of the supply of that circuit is connected to the protective bonding circuit;		N/A		
	c) live parts of PELV circuits shall be electrically separated from other live circuits (see IEC 61558)		N/A		
	d) conductors of each PELV circuit shall be physically separated from those of any other circuit. If this requirement is impracticable, the insulation provisions of 13.1.3 shall apply		N/A		
	e) plugs and socket-outlets for a PELV circuit shall conform to the following: -plugs shall not to enter socket-outlets of other voltage systems -socket-outlets shall not admit plugs of other voltage systems		N/A		
6.4.2	The sources for PELV shall be one of the following:				
	- a safety isolating transformer in accordance with IEC 61558-1 and IEC 61558-2-6 or		N/A		



IEC 60204-1				
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	- a source of current with a degree of safety equi-		N/A	
	valent to that of the safety isolating transformer or		IN/A	
	- a source independent of circuit with higher voltage (e.g. battery or diesel –driven) or		N/A	
	- electronic power supply conforming to appropriate standards		N/A	
7.	PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT			
7.1	This Clause 7 details the measures to be taken to protect equipment against the effects of: overcurrent arising from a short-circuit; overload and/or loss of cooling of motors; abnormal temperature; loss of or reduction in the supply voltage; overspeed of machines/machine elements; earth fault/residual current; incorrect phase sequence; overvoltage due to lightning and switching surges.		_	
7.2	Overcurrent protection		_	
7.2.1	Overcurrent protection shall be provided where the current in any circuit can exceed the rating of a component or the capacity of a conductor	Circuit breaker or fuse	Р	
7.2.2	Supply conductors		_	
	Unless otherwise specified by the user, the supplier of the electrical equipment is not responsible for providing the supply conductors or the overcurrent protective device for it	Meet requirements	Р	
	In the installation documents, the data necessary for conductor dimensioning and selecting the overcurrent protective device are stated (see 7.2.10 and 17.4)		Р	
7.2.3	Power circuits			
	Devices for detection and interruption of overcurrent, selected in accordance with 7.2.10, are applied to each live conductor including supplies to control circuit transformers.	The PE conductor is not disconnected in any case.	Р	



IEC 60204-1				
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	The following conductors shall not be disconnected without disconnecting all associated live conductors: -the neutral conductor of AC power circuits; -the earthed conductor of DC power circuits; -DC power conductors bonded to exposed conductive parts of mobile machines.		P	
	Where the cross-section area of the neutral conductor is at least equal to the line conductor, no overcurrent detection nor disconnecting device is required for that conductor		Р	
	Otherwise the measures detailed in 524 of IEC 60364-5-52:2009 shall apply		Р	
	In IT-Systems, it is recommended that no neutral conductor is used. Where a neutral conductor is used, the measures detailed in 431.2.2 of IEC 60364-4-43:2008 shall apply		N/A	
7.2.4	Control circuits		_	
	Conductors of control circuits directly connected to the supply shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with 7.2.3.	There is circuit breaker used for protecting the control transformer.	Р	
	Conductors of control circuits supplied by a transformer or DC supply shall be protected against overcurrent (see also 9.4.3.1.1):		_	
	-In control circuits, connected to the protective bonding circuit, by an overcurrent protective device in the switched conductor	Meet requirements	Р	
	-In circuits, not connected to the protective bonding circuit: - Where all control circuits have the same current carrying capacity, by an overcurrent protective device in the switched conductor - Otherwise, by an overcurrent protective device in both, switched and common conductors of each control circuit		Р	
	Exception: Where a supply unit provides current limiting below the capacity of the conductors and the connected components, no overcurrent protective device is required		_	
7.2.5	Overcurrent protection shall be provided for circuits feeding general purpose socket outlets		N/A	
7.2.6	Unearthed conductors of lighting circuits shall be protected separately from other circuits.		N/A	



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
		,	
7.2.7	Transformers shall be protected in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and includes: -avoiding tripping due to transformer magnetizing inrush currents -avoiding a winding temperature rise in excess of the permitted value for the insulation class when there is a short circuit at the secondary terminals	The transformer has achieved the relative safety Certificate.	Р
7.2.8	Location of overcurrent protective devices		_
	It shall be located at the point where a reduction in the cross sectional area of the conductors or another change reduces the current-carrying capacity of the conductors except:	All the location points are according to the instruction of the overcurrent protective device.	Р
	 -current carrying capacity of the conductors is at least equal to that of the load and -conductors between the point of reduction of current-carrying capacity and the position of the overcurrent protective device is ≤ 3 m and -the conductor is protected e.g. by an enclosure or duct. 	These situations have been taken into consideration during the design of the electrical diagram.	Р
7.2.9	Overcurrent protective devices		_
	The rated short-circuit breaking capacity Icn shall be at least equal to the prospective fault current at the point of installation. Additional currents other than from the supply (e.g. from motors, from power factor correction capacitors) shall be taken into consideration.	The overcurrent has the enough short-circuit breaking capacity Icn.	Р
	Where fuses are provided as overcurrent protective devices, a type readily available in the country of use shall be selected, or arrangements shall be made for the supply of spare parts.	The type and brand of the fuse is international, detail see the electrical components list.	Р
7.2.10	Rating and setting of overcurrent protective devices:		_
	Rated current of fuses or overcurrent setting of other protective devices selected as low as possible, but adequate for anticipated overcurrents.	The type of fuse and circuit breaker's setting is reasonable.	Р
	The rated current of overcurrent protective device for conductors is determined by the current carrying capacity of the conductors to be protected in accordance with Cl. 12.4, D.2 and the maximum allowable interrupting time <i>t</i> in accordance with Clause D.3.	The coordination has been taken into account.	Р
7.3	Protection of motors against overheating		_



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
7.3.1	Protection shall be provided for each motor rated at more than 0.5 kW.	All the motor have been protected.	Р
	Exception: In applications where an automatic interruption of the motor operation is unacceptable (for example fire pumps), the means of detection shall give a warning signal to which the operator can respond.	The relative devices have no use in the machine.	_
	Automatic restarting prevented where this can cause a hazard		Р
7.3.2	Protection achieved by overload protection device: detection in each live conductor switching off of all live conductors (not necessary to switch of neutral conductor)	The two means have been used in the machine.	Р
	For special duty motors, appropriate protective devices are recommended		N/A
	For motors that cannot be overloaded, overload protection is not required.		N/A
7.3.3	Protection achieved by over-temperature protection device: Is recommended in situations where the cooling can be impaired (for example dusty environments)	No this situation.	N/A
7.4	Equipment shall be protected against abnormal temperatures that can result in a hazardous situation.	No these kind of circuits.	N/A
7.5	Protection against the effects of supply interruption subsequent restoration	n or voltage reduction and	_
	Where a supply interruption or a voltage reduction can cause a hazardous situation, damage to the machine, or to the work in progress, undervoltage protection is provided.		N/A
	Upon restoration of supply voltage, automatic or unexpected restarting of machine prevented.	The unexpected restarting is prevented by the machine.	N/A
	Undervoltage protection does initiate appropriate control responses to ensure necessary coordination of groups of machines working together	No this groups.	N/A
7.6	Motor overspeed protection shall be provided where overspeeding can occur and could possibly cause a hazardous situation.		N/A



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
7.7	In addition to providing overcurrent protection for automatic disconnection as described in 6.3, earth fault/residual current protection can be provided to		N/A
	reduce damage to equipment due to earth fault currents less than the detection level of the overcurrent protection.		
7.8	Phase sequence protection shall be provided, where an incorrect phase sequence of the supply voltage can cause a hazardous situation or damage to the machine.		N/A
7.9	Surge protective devices (SPDs) can be provided to protect against the effects of overvoltages due to lightning or to switching surges.		N/A
7.10	The short-circuit current rating of the electrical equipment shall be determined by the application of design rules or by calculation or by test.		Р
8	EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING		_
8.1	This Clause 8 provides requirements for protective bonding and functional bonding.		_
8.2	Protective bonding circuit		_
8.2.1	All parts of the protective bonding circuit shall be so designed that they are capable of withstanding the highest thermal and mechanical stresses	copper	Р
	Protective conductors which does not form part of a cable shall not be less than:		_
	-2.5 mm ² Cu or 16 mm ² Al if protection against mechanical damage is provided		Р
	-4 mm ² Cu or 16 mm ² Al if protection against mechanical damage is not provided		Р
	Exposed conductive parts of equipment in accordance with 6.3.2.3 (Protection by electrical separation) shall not be connected to the protective bonding circuit.		N/A
	Small parts and other conductive parts that do not constitute a hazard need not to be earthed		N/A
8.2.2	Protective conductors		_
	Protective conductors shall be identified in accordance with 13.2.2.		Р
	Copper conductors are preferred.		Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	Where other material is used, its electrical resistance per unit length shall not exceed that of the allowable copper conductor and such conductors shall be not less than 16 mm ² in cross-sectional area.		N/A	
	Metal enclosures or frames or mounting plates may be used as protective conductors if they satisfy the following three requirements: -protection against mechanical, chemical or electrochemical deterioration -compliant with 543.1 of IEC 60364-5-54: -permit the connection of other protective conductors where foreseen	See the 5.2.	Р	
	The cross-section of protective conductors shall be calculated according to 543.1.2 of IEC 60364-5-54, or selected in accordance with Table 1.		Р	
	Each protective conductor shall: -be part of a multicore cable, or; -be in a common enclosure with the line conductor, or; -have a cross-sectional area of at least; -2.5 mm² Cu or 16 mm² Al with protection against mechanical damage -4 mm² Cu or 16 mm² Al without protection against mechanical damage		Р	
	A protective conductor not forming part of a cable is considered to be mechanically protected if it is installed in a conduit, trunking or protected in a similar way.		Р	
	The following parts shall be connected to the protective bonding circuit but shall not be used as protective conductors: -conductive structural parts of the machine; -metal ducts of flexible or rigid construction; -metallic cable sheaths or armouring; -metallic pipes containing flammable materials such as gases, liquids, powderflexible or pliable metal conduits; -constructional parts subject to mechanical stress in normal service; -• flexible metal parts; support wires; cable trays and cable ladders.		P	
8.2.3	Continuity of the protective bonding circuit		_	
	Where a part is removed the protective bonding circuit for the remaining parts isn't interrupted.	Every part in the machine is separated.	Р	



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	Current-carrying capacity of connection and bonding points not impaired by mechanical, chemical, or electrochemical influences (e.g. electrolytic corrosion on aluminium parts)	All the connection uses the copper conductor.	P
	Where the electrical equipment is mounted on lids, doors, or cover plates, continuity of the protective bonding circuit shall be ensured. The use of a protective conductor (see 8.2.2) is recommended.	These lid and door in the machine are well connected with the protective conductor.	Р
	For cables that are exposed to damage (for example flexible trailing cables) the continuity of the protective conductors are ensured by appropriate measures (for example monitoring).		Р
	Where the continuity can be interrupted, a first make last break contact is required.		N/A
8.2.4	Protective conductor connecting points are not intended to attach appliances or parts.		Р
	Each connecting point shall be marked or labelled as such using the symbol IEC 60417-5019 or the letters PE or by use of bicolour GREEN / YELLOW	These labels are provided in the machine.	Р
8.2.5	Mobile machines with on-board power supplies: The protective bonding system is connected to a single protective bonding terminal. This protective bonding terminal is the connection point for a possible additional external incoming power supply		N/A
8.2.6	Additional requirements for electrical equipment has higher than 10 mA	aving earth leakage currents	_
	Where electrical equipment has an earth leakage curre DC the associated protective bonding circuit shall satis		
	a)the protective conductor is completely enclosed or otherwise protected		N/A
	b)the protective conductor has a cross-sectional area of at least 10 mm ² Cu or 16 mm ² Al		N/A
	c)a second protective conductor of at least the same cross-sectional area is provided		N/A
	d)the supply is automatically disconnected in case of loss of continuity of the protective conductor		N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	e)where a plug-socket combination is used, an industrial connector in accordance with IEC 60309 series is provided		N/A
	A statement shall be given in the instructions for installation that the equipment shall be installed as described in this 8.2.6.		N/A
8.3	Measures to restrict the effects of high leakage current can be taken as described		N/A
8.4	If functional bonding is used, the connecting points should be marked with symbol IEC 60417-5020		N/A
		_	
9	CONTROL CIRCUITS AND CONTROL FUNCTIONS	.	_
9.1.	Control circuit		_
9.1.1	Where control circuits are supplied from an AC source, transformers having separate windings shall be used to separate the power supply from the control supply.	Control transformer is used.	Р
	Examples include: control transformers acc. to IEC 61558-2-2, SMPS acc. to IEC 61558-2-16 power supplies acc. to IEC 61204-7		Р
	Where several transformers are used, it is recommended that the secondary voltages are in phase.		N/A
	Exception: Transformers or switch mode power supply units fitted with transformers are not mandatory for machines with a single motor starter and/or a maximum of two control devices		_
	Where DC control circuits derived from an AC supply are connected to the protective bonding, they shall be supplied from a separate winding		Р
9.1.2	The nominal voltage of control circuits should preferably not exceed -230 V @ 50 Hz -277 V @ 60 Hz -220 V @ DC		Р
9.1.3	Control circuits are provided with overcurrent protection in accordance with 7.2.4 and 7.2.10.	The overcurrent protection is provided in the machine.	Р
9.2.	Control functions		



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
9.2.2	Categories of stop functions are stop category 0, 1, 2		Р
9.2.3	Operation		
9.2.3.1	Where a machine has more than one control station, measures shall be provided to ensure that initiation of commands from different control stations do not lead to a hazardous situation.	Use the selective switch with lock.	Р
9.2.3.2	Start functions shall operate by energizing the relevant circuit.		Р
	Start of an operation shall be possible only when all of the relevant safety functions and/or protective measures are in place and are operational.	Only reset the safety relay and emergency stop, the machine could start.	Р
	Where safety functions and/or protective measures cannot be applied for certain operations, manual control of such operations are by hold-to-run controls, together with enabling devices, as appropriate.	No this situation.	Р
	In the case of machines requiring the use of more than one control station to initiate a start, each of these control stations shall have a separate manually actuated start control device. The conditions to initiate a start are: - all required conditions for machine operation shall be met and - all start control devices shall be in the released (off) position, then - all start control devices have to be actuated concurrently (see 3.1.7).		Р
9.2.3.3	Stop category 0 and/or stop category 1 and/or stop category 2 stop functions are provided as indicated by the risk assessment and the functional requirements of the machine (see 4.1).		Р
	Stop functions shall override related start functions		Р
	Where more than one control station is provided, stop commands from any control station is effective when required by the risk assessment of the machine.	This stop command form any control station is effective.	Р
9.2.3.4	Emergency operations (emergency stop, emergency switching off)		
9.2.3.4.1	Emergency stop or emergency switching off commands shall be sustained until it is reset.		Р
	This reset shall be possible only by a manual action at that location where the command has been initiated.		Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
			_	
	The reset of the command shall not restart the machinery but only permit restarting.		Р	
	It shall not be possible to restart the machinery until all emergency stop commands are reset.		Р	
	It shall not be possible to reenergize the machinery until all emergency switching off commands are reset.		Р	
9.2.3.4.2	The emergency stop does function either as a stop category 0 or as a stop category 1.		Р	
	 it shall override all other functions and operations in all modes it shall stop the hazardous motion as quickly as practicable without creating other hazards a reset shall not initiate a restart 		Р	
9.2.3.4.3	Emergency switching off should be provided where: Protection against direct contact is achieved only by placing out of reach or by obstacles (see 6.2.6) or there is the possibility of other hazards or damage caused by electricity		Р	
	Emergency switching off is accomplished by electromechanical switching devices, effecting a stop category 0 of machine actuators connected to this incoming supply		Р	
9.2.3.5	Operating modes		_	
	Where machinery uses several control or operating modes requiring different protective measures and having a different impact on safety, it shall be fitted with a mode selector which can be locked in each position		Р	
	Another selection method can be used (for example an access code)		Р	
	Mode selection by itself does not initiate machine operation. A separate actuation of the start control has to be stated by the operator.		Р	
	Indication of the selected operating mode shall be provided (e.g. the position of a mode selector, the provision of an indicating light, a visual display indication)		Р	



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
9.2.3.6	Movement or action that can result in a hazardous		N/A	
	situation shall be monitored by providing, for example, overtravel limiters, motor overspeed detection, mechanical overload detection or anticollision devices			
9.2.3.7	Hold-to-run controls shall require continuous actuation of the control device(s) to achieve operation		Р	
9.2.3.8	Two-hand controls shall be one of the following types and have the following features		N/A	
	Type I: this type requires:		N/A	
	Type II: a Type I control requiring the release of both control devices before machine operation can be reinitiated		N/A	
	Type III: a Type II control requiring concurrent actuation of the control devices as follows:		N/A	
9.2.3.9	Enabling control shall be so arranged as to minimize the possibility of defeating, for example by requiring the de-activation of the enabling control device before machine operation may be reinitiated		Р	
9.2.3.10	Combined start and stop controls: Push-buttons etc. that alternately initiate and stop motion shall only be provided for functions, which cannot result in a hazardous situation.		N/A	
9.2.4	Cableless control system		_	



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
9.2.4.1	The CCS shall have functionality and a response time suitable for the application based on the risk assessment.	No cableless control	N/A
9.2.4.2	The ability of a CCS to control a machine shall be automatically monitored, either continuously or at suitable intervals.		N/A
	If the communication signal has degraded (e.g., reduced signal level, low battery power) a warning shall be given		N/A
	When the ability to control a machine has been lost, an automatic stop of the machine shall be initiated.		N/A
	Its restoration shall not restart the machine.		N/A
9.2.4.3	Measures shall be taken to prevent the machine from responding to signals other than those from the intended operator control station(s).		N/A
	Cableless operator control station(s) shall only control the intended machine(s) and shall affect only the intended machine functions.		N/A
9.2.4.4	When more than one cableless operator control station	on is used, then:	_
	-only one control station shall be enabled at a time except as necessary for the operation		N/A
	transfer of control shall require a deliberate manual action at the station having control		N/A
	- transfer shall only be possible if both stations are in the same mode		N/A
	- a transfer shall not change the mode of operation or function		N/A
	- on the station that has control, a visual indication shall indicate this		N/A
9.2.4.5	Portable cableless operator control stations shall be provided with means to prevent unauthorized use		N/A
	Each machine should have an indication when it is under cableless control		N/A
	When possible to be connected to several machines, means shall be provided on the portable device to select		N/A
	Selecting a machine shall not initiate control commands.		N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
9.2.4.6	A deliberate disabling shall meet the requirements of 9.2.4.2.		N/A
	Where disabling without interrupting machine operation is necessary, appropriate means shall be provided to transfer control		N/A
9.2.4.7	Emergency stop devices on portable cableless operator control stations shall not be the sole means of initiating an emergency stop		N/A
	Confusion between active and inactive emergency stop devices shall be avoided		N/A
9.2.4.8	Restarting of a cableless control shall not result in a reset of an emergency stop condition		N/A
	The instructions shall state that a reset shall only be performed when it can be seen that the reason has been cleared		N/A
9.3	Protective interlocks		_
9.3.1	The reclosing or resetting of an interlocking safeguard does not initiate hazardous machine operation	Reset button is provided.	Р
9.3.2	Where an operating limit (for example speed, pressure, position) can be exceeded leading to a hazardous situation, means shall be provided to detect when a predetermined limit(s) is exceeded and initiate an appropriate control action	Door lock switch	Р
9.3.3	The correct operation of auxiliary functions shall be checked by appropriate devices		N/A
	Where the non-operation of a device can cause a hazard, appropriate interlocking shall be provided		N/A
9.3.4	Interlocks between different operations and for contrary motions shall be provided, if these operations can lead to hazardous situations		N/A
9.3.5	Where braking of a motor is accomplished by current reversal, measures shall prevent the motor starting in the opposite direction at the end of braking where that reversal can cause a hazardous situation or damage to the machine or to the work in progress		N/A
	For this purpose, a device operating exclusively as a function of time is not permitted		N/A
	Control circuits shall be so arranged that rotation of a motor shaft, for example manually, does not result in a hazardous situation	This is requirement has been complied with.	Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
9.3.6	Where it is necessary to suspend safety functions and control or operating mode selector shall simultaneously		_
	- disable all other operating (control) modes		N/A
	 permit operation only by the use of a hold-to- run device or by a similar control device positioned so as to permit sight of the hazardous elements 		N/A
	 prevent any operation of hazardous functions by voluntary or involuntary action on the machine's sensors 		N/A
	If these four conditions cannot be fulfilled, the mode selector shall activate other protective measures to ensure a safe intervention zone. In addition, the operator shall be able to control operation of the parts he is working on from the adjustment point.		N/A
9.4	Control functions in the event of failure		_
9.4.1	The electrical control system(s) shall have an appropriate performance that has been determined from the risk assessment of the machine		Р
	The requirements for safety-related control functions of IEC 62061 and/or ISO 13849-1, ISO 13849-2 shall apply		Р
	Where memory retention is achieved for example, by battery power, measures shall be taken to prevent hazardous situations arising from failure, undervoltage or removal of the battery		Р
	Means shall be provided to prevent unauthorized or inadvertent memory alteration by, for example, requiring the use of a key, access code or tool		Р
9.4.2	Measures to minimize risk in the event of failure		_
9.4.2.2	Use of proven circuit techniques and components (see examples)		Р
9.4.2.3	Provisions of partial or complete redundancy		Р
9.4.2.4	Provision of diversity (see examples)		Р
9.4.2.5	Provision for functional tests		Р
9.4.3	Protection against malfunction of control circuits		_
9.4.3.1.1	Measures shall be provided to reduce the probability that insulation faults on any control circuit can cause malfunction		Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
9.4.3.1.2	Method a) – Earthed control circuits fed by transformers		P	
	The common conductor shall be connected to the protective bonding circuit at the point of supply.		Р	
	All control elements are to be inserted on the other side of the components		Р	
9.4.3.1.3	Method b) – Non-earthed control circuits fed by transformers shall either		N/A	
	have 2-pole control switches that operate on both conductors; or		N/A	
	2) be provided with a device that interrupts the circuit automatically in the event of an earth fault; or		N/A	
	3) where 2) above would increase the risk, it can be sufficient to provide an insulation monitoring device hat will initiate an acoustic and optical signal		N/A	
9.4.3.1.4	Method c) – Control circuits fed by transformer with an earthed centre-tap winding shall have overcurrent protective devices that break both the conductors		N/A	
	The control switches shall be 2-pole types that operate on both conductors		N/A	
9.4.3.1.5	Method d) – Control circuits not fed by a transformer are only allowed for machines with a maximum of one motor starter and/or maximum of two control devices, in accordance with 9.1.1		N/A	
	Possible cases are:		_	
	directly connected to an earthed supply system (TN- or TT-system)		N/A	
	If powered between two lines, multi-pole control switches are required		N/A	
	directly connected to a supply system that is not earthed or is earthed through a high impedance (IT-system)		N/A	
	A device shall be provided that interrupts the circuit automatically in the event of an earth fault		N/A	
9.4.3.2	Where the loss of memory due to a power failure can result in a hazardous situation, appropriate measures shall be taken		N/A	



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
9.4.3.3	Where the loss of continuity of control circuits depending upon sliding contacts can result in a hazard, appropriate measures shall be taken		N/A
10	OPERATOR INTERFACE AND MACHINE-MOUNTI	ED CONTROL DEVICES	_
10.1.1	Control devices for operator interface shall, as far as is practicable, be selected, mounted, and identified or coded in accordance with IEC 61310 series	Meet requirements	Р
10.1.2	As far as is practicable, machine-mounted control de	vices shall be:	_
	- readily accessible for service and maintenance		Р
	mounted in such a manner as to minimize the possibility of damage from activities such as material handling		Р
	The actuators of hand-operated control devices are s	selected and installed so that:	_
	they are not less than 0,6 m above the servicing level and are within easy reach of the normal working position of the operator		Р
	the operator is not placed in a hazardous situation when operating them		Р
	The actuators of foot-operated control devices are selected and installed so that:		<u> </u>
	they are within easy reach of the normal working position of the operator		N/A
	the operator is not placed in a hazardous situation when operating them		N/A
10.1.3	The degree of protection (IP rating in accordance with IEC 60529) together with other appropriate measures shall provide protection against:		Р
	the effects of liquids, vapours, or gases found in the physical environment or used on the machine		Р
	the ingress of contaminants (for example swarf, dust, particulate matter)		Р
	The operator interface control devices shall have a minimum degree of protection against contact with live parts of IPXXD (see IEC 60529)		Р
10.1.4	Position sensors (for example position switches, proximity switches) are so arranged that they will not be damaged in the event of overtravel		Р



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	Position sensors in circuits with safety-related control functions shall have direct opening action (see IEC 60947-5-1) or shall provide similar reliability (see 9.4.2)	It has been complied with this requirement.	Р
10.1.5	Portable and pendant operator control stations and their control devices are so selected and arranged as to minimize the possibility of machine operations caused by inadvertent actuation, shocks and vibrations	No portable operator station.	N/A
10.2	Actuators		_
10.2.1	Actuators shall be colour-coded as follows:		_
	The colours for START/ON actuators should be WHITE, GREY, BLACK or GREEN with a preference for WHITE. RED shall not be used		Р
	The colour RED shall be used for emergency stop and emergency switching off actuators		Р
	If a background exists, it shall be coloured YELLOW		Р
	The colours for STOP/OFF actuators should be BLACK, GREY, or WHITE with a preference for BLACK. GREEN shall not be used. RED is permitted		Р
	WHITE, GREY, or BLACK are the preferred colours for actuators that alternately act as START/ON and STOP/OFF actuators. The colours RED, YELLOW, or GREEN shall not be used		Р
	The same is applicable for "hold-to-run" actuators		Р
	Reset actuators shall be BLUE, WHITE, GREY, or BLACK. Where they also act as a STOP/OFF actuator, the colours WHITE, GREY, or BLACK are preferred with the main preference being for BLACK. GREEN shall not be used.		Р
	The colour YELLOW is reserved for use in abnormal conditions		Р
	Where the same colours are used for various functions, a supplementary means of coding shall be used for the identification		Р
10.2.2	Recommended markings for actuators are given in table 2 and 3		Р
10.3	Indicator lights and displays		_



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
10.3.1	Indicator lights and displays shall be selected and installed in such a manner as to be visible from the normal position of the operator (see also IEC 61310-1).		Р	
	Circuits used for visual or audible devices used to warn persons of an impending hazardous event shall be fitted with facilities to check the operability of these devices		Р	
10.3.2	Indicator lights should be colour-coded with respect to the condition (status) of the machine in accordance with Table 4.		Р	
	Indicating towers on machines have the applicable colours in the following order from the top down; RED, YELLOW, BLUE, GREEN and WHITE.		Р	
10.3.3	For further distinction or information and especially to give additional emphasis, flashing lights and displays can be provided		Р	
	Where flashing lights or displays are used to provide higher priority information, additional acoustic warnings should be considered		Р	
10.4	illuminated push-button actuators shall be colour-coded in accordance with Tables 2 and 4. Where there is difficulty in assigning an appropriate colour, WHITE is used.		Р	
	The colour RED for the emergency stop actuator shall not depend on the illumination of its light.		Р	
10.5	Devices having a rotational member , such as potentiometers and selector switches, shall have means of prevention of rotation of the stationary member. Friction alone isn't considered sufficient.		Р	
10.6	Actuators used to initiate a start function or the movement of machine elements shall be constructed and mounted so as to minimize inadvertent operation		Р	
10.7	Emergency stop devices		_	
10.7.1	Devices for emergency stop are readily accessible	Meet requirements	Р	
	Emergency stop devices shall be provided at each location where the initiation of an emergency stop can be required		Р	



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	In circumstances where confusion can occur between active and inactive emergency stop devices caused by disabling the operator control station, means (for example, information for use) are provided to minimise confusion.		Р
10.7.2	The types of device for emergency stop include, but are not limited to: – a push-button device for actuation by the palm or the fist (e.g. mushroom) – a pull-cord operated switch – a pedal-operated switch without mechanical guard		P
	The devices shall be in accordance with IEC 60947-5-5.		Р
10.7.3	Where a stop category 0 is suitable, the supply disconnecting device may serve the function of emergency stop where: – it is readily accessible to the operator; and – it is of the type described in 5.3.2 a), b), c), or d)		Р
	Where intended for emergency use, the supply disconnecting device shall meet the colour requirements of 10.2.1		Р
10.8	Emergency switching off devices		_
10.8.1	Such devices shall be located as necessary for the given application.		N/A
	Means are provided, where necessary, to avoid confusion between these devices.		N/A
10.8.2	The types of device for emergency switching off include: - a push-button operated switch with a palm or mushroom head type of actuator - a pull-cord operated switch		N/A
	The devices shall have direct opening action		N/A
10.8.3	Where the supply disconnecting device is to be locally operated for emergency switching off, it shall be readily accessible and shall meet the colour requirements of 10.2.1		N/A
10.9	Enabling control device		_
	Enabling control devices shall be selected and arranged so as to minimize the possibility of defeating		Р



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	They shall be designed in accordance with ergonomic principles		Р
	 Functions of two-position types: position 1: off-function of the switch (actuator is not operated); position 2: enabling function (actuator is operated) 		Р
	 Functions of three-position types: position 1: off-function of the switch (actuator is not operated) position 2: enabling function (actuator is operated in its mid position) position 3: off-function (actuator is operated past its mid position) when returning from position 3 to position 2, the enabling function is not activated 		N/A
11	CONTROLGEAR: LOCATION, MOUNTING AND EN	NCLOSURES	
11.2.1	All items of controlgear (inclusively terminals that are not part of controlgear components or devices) are placed and oriented so that they can be identified without moving them or the wiring		Р
	For items that require checking for correct operation or that are liable to need replacement, those actions should be possible without dismantling other equipment or parts of the machine (except opening doors or removing covers, barriers or obstacles)		Р
	All controlgear are mounted so as to facilitate its operation and maintenance		Р
	Necessary tools to adjust, maintain, or remove a device are supplied		Р
	Where access is required for regular maintenance or adjustment, the relevant devices shall be located between 0.4 m and 2.0 m above the servicing level		Р
	Recommendation, that terminals be least 0.2 m above the servicing level and so placed that conductors and cables can be easily connected		Р
	Only operating, indicating, measuring, and cooling devices are mounted on doors or on normally removable access covers of enclosures	The components mounted on the doors are used as operating, indicating.	Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	Where connected through plug-in arrangements, their association shall be made clear by type (shape), marking or reference designation		Р	
	Plug-in devices that are handled during normal operation shall be provided with non-interchangeable features		N/A	
	Plug/socket combinations that are handled during normal operation are unobstructedly accessible.		N/A	
	Test points for connection of test equipment shall be: – mounted to provide unobstructed access – clearly identified to correspond with the documentation – adequately insulated – sufficiently spaced		N/A	
11.2.2	Physical separation or grouping		_	
	Non-electrical parts and devices, not directly associated with the electrical equipment, shall not be located within enclosures containing controlgear	Non-electrical parts are mounted outside the enclosure.	Р	
	Devices such as solenoid valves should be separated from the other electrical equipment (for example in a separate compartment)	Solenoid and relative device are separated from the electrical equipments.	Р	
	Control devices mounted in the same location and connected to the supply voltage, or to both supply and control voltages, should be grouped separately from those connected only to the control voltages		Р	
	Terminals shall be separated into groups for: a) power circuits b) associated control circuits c)other control circuits, fed from external sources (for example for interlocking)		Р	
	The clearances and creepage distances specified by the supplier shall be maintained, taking into account the external influences or conditions of the physical environment.		Р	
11.2.3	The temperature rise inside electrical equipment enclosures shall not exceed the ambient temperature specified by the component manufacturers		Р	
	Heat generating components (for example heat sinks, power resistors) are located so, that the temperature of each component in the vicinity remains within the permitted limit		Р	



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
11.3	Degrees of protection			
	The protection of controlgear against ingress of solid foreign objects and of liquids shall be adequate taking into account the external influences under which the machine is intended to operate and shall be sufficient against dust, coolants, lubricants and swarf		Р	
	Enclosures of controlgear provide a degree of protection of at least IP22 (see IEC 60529)		Р	
	Exception, where: - an electrical operating area provides an appropriate degree of protection - removable collectors on conductor wire or conductor bar systems are used and the measures of 12.7.1 are applied		Р	
11.4	Enclosures, doors and openings		_	
	Enclosures shall be constructed using materials capable of withstanding the mechanical, electrical and thermal stresses as well as the effects of humidity and other environmental factors that are likely to be encountered in normal service	The enclosure has been complied with these requirements.	Р	
	Fasteners used to secure doors and covers should be of the captive type		Р	
	Windows of enclosures shall be of a material suitable to withstand expected mechanical stress and chemical attack		Р	
	It is recommended that enclosure doors having vertical hinges be not wider than 0,9 m, with an angle of opening of at least 95°	The two requirements have been complied with.	Р	
	Joints or gaskets of doors, lids, etc. shall withstand the chemical effects of the aggressive liquids, vapours, or gases used on the machine.		Р	
	They shall: - be securely attached - not deteriorate due to removal or replacement of the door		Р	
	Openings in enclosures (for example, for cable access), including those towards the floor or foundation or to other parts of the machine shall be equipped with means to ensure the degree of protection specified for the equipment.		Р	



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	A suitable opening may be provided in the base of enclosures within the machine so that moisture due to condensation can drain away		Р
	Openings for cable entries shall be easily re-opened on site		Р
	There shall be no opening between enclosures containing electrical equipment and compartments containing coolant, lubricating or hydraulic fluids, or those into which oil, other liquids, or dust can penetrate.		P
	Holes in an enclosure for mounting shall not impair the required protection.		Р
	Equipment that, in normal or abnormal operation, can attain a surface temperature sufficient to cause a risk of fire or harmful effect to an enclosure material shall: - be located within an enclosure that will withstand, such temperatures; and - be located at a sufficient distance from adjacent equipment allowing safe dissipation of heat (see also 11.2.3); or - be otherwise screened by material that can withstand to the harmful effect.		N/A
11.5	Access to electrical equipment		_
	Doors in gangways for access to electrical operating areas shall: - be at least 0.7 m wide and 2.0 m high - open outwards - have a means (for example panic bolts) to allow opening from the inside without the use of a key or tool		N/A
12	CONDUCTORS AND CABLES		_
12.1	Conductors and cables shall be selected so as to be suitable for the operating conditions and external Influences that can exist	The copper conductors have been provided.	Р
	These requirements do not apply to the integral wiring and devices that are manufactured and tested in acco IEC standard (for example IEC 61800 series).	of assemblies, subassemblies, rdance with their relevant	_
12.2	Conductors should be of copper. Where aluminium conductors are used, the cross-sectional area shall be at least 16 mm ² .		Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	The cross-sectional area of conductors should not be less than as shown in Table 5		Р
	Smaller cross-sectional areas or other constructions than shown in Table 5 may be used, provided adequate mechanical strength is achieved by other means		Р
	Class 1 and class 2 conductors are primarily intended for use between rigid, non-moving parts where vibration is not likely to cause damage		Р
	All conductors that are subject to frequent movement should have flexible stranding of class 5 or class 6.		Р
12.3	Where the insulation of conductors and cables can constitute hazards due for example to the propagation of a fire or the emission of toxic or corrosive fumes adequate means are provided.		Р
	Special attention is given to the integrity of a circuit having a safety-related function		
	The insulation of cables and conductors used, shall be	pe suitable for a test voltage:	_
	- not less than 2 000 V AC for a duration of 5 min for operation at voltages higher than 50 V AC or 120 V DC, or		Р
	- not less than 500 V AC for a duration of 5 min for PELV circuits (see IEC 60364-4-41, class III equipment).		Р
	The insulation shall be such that it cannot be damaged in operation or during laying, especially for cables pulled into ducts.		Р
12.4	Current-carrying capacity in normal service in accordance with table 6.		Р
	Or in accordance with suppliers recommendation.		
12.5	The voltage drop from the point of supply to the load in any power circuit cable shall not exceed 5 % of the nominal voltage under normal operating conditions.		Р
	In control circuits, the voltage drop shall not reduce the voltage at any device below the manufacturer's specification for that device, taking into account inrush currents.		Р
12.6	Flexible cables		_



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	,		
12.6.1	Flexible cables shall have Class 5 or Class 6 conductors		Р
	Cables that are subjected to severe duties shall be of adequate construction to protect against: - abrasion due to mechanical handling and dragging across rough surfaces - kinking due to operation without guides - stress resulting from guide rollers and forced guiding, being wound and re-wound on cable drums		Р
12.6.2	The tensile stress applied to copper conductors shall not exceed 15 N/mm² of cross-sectional area Or special measures are taken to withstand the applied stress		Р
	For material other than copper the applied stress shall be within the cable manufacturer's specification		Р
12.6.3	For cables of circular cross-sectional area installed on drums, the maximum current should be derated in accordance with Table 7		Р
12.7	Conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring as	semblies	_
12.7.1	During normal access to the machine, protection to conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring assemblies shall be achieved by the application of one of the following protective measures:	The live parts are protected and the enclosure has the IP 32	Р
	protection by partial insulation of live parts, or where this is not practicable		Р
	- protection by enclosures or barriers of at least IP2X or IPXXB		Р
	Horizontal top surfaces of barriers or enclosures that are readily accessible shall provide a degree of protection of at least IP4X or IPXXD		Р
	Where the required degree of protection is not achieved, protection by placing live parts out of reach in combination with emergency switching off in accordance with 9.2.5.4.3 shall be applied		N/A
	Conductor wires and conductor bars shall be so place	ed and/or protected as to:	
	-prevent contact, especially for unprotected conductor wires and conductor bars, with conductive items such as the cords of pull-cord switches, strain-relief devices and drive chains	The conductor wires have been well placed.	Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	- prevent damage from a swinging load		Р	
12.7.2	Protective conductor circuit (PE) and the neutral conductor (N) each use a separate conductor wire, conductor bar or slip-ring	They are separated.	Р	
	The continuity of the protective conductor circuit using sliding contacts shall be ensured by taking appropriate measures (for example, duplication of the current collector, continuity monitoring)	No sliding contacts used in the machine.	N/A	
12.7.3	Protective conductor current collectors shall have a shape or construction so that they are not interchangeable with the other current collectors. Such current collectors shall be of the sliding contact type		N/A	
12.7.4	Removable current collectors with disconnector function: The protective conductor circuit interrupts after and reconnects before any live conductor		N/A	
12.7.5	Clearances in air between conductors and adjacent systems shall be suitable for at least a rated impulse voltage of an overvoltage category III in accordance with IEC 60664-1		N/A	
12.7.6	Creepage distances between conductors and adjacent systems shall be suitable suitable for operation in the intended environment, e.g. open air, inside buildings, protected by enclosures		Р	
	In abnormally dusty, moist or corrosive environments, the following creepage distance requirements apply:		Р	
	unprotected conductor wires, conductor bars, and slip-ring assemblies: 60 mm		Р	
	enclosed conductor wires, insulated multipole conductor bars and insulated individual conductor bars: 30 mm		Р	
12.7.7	Conductor system divided into isolated sections: suitable design measures shall be employed to prevent the energization of adjacent sections by the current collectors themselves		Р	
12.7.8	Conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring assemblies in power circuits shall be grouped separately from those in control circuits	The conductor wires could reach the requirements.	Р	
	They shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, the mechanical forces and thermal effects of short-circuit currents		Р	



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	Removable covers cannot be opened by one person without the aid of a tool		Р	
	Where common metal enclosures are used, the individual sections shall be bonded together and connected to the protective bonding circuit		Р	
	Conductor bar ducts that can be subject to accumulation of liquid shall have drainage facilities		Р	
13	WIRING PRACTICES		_	
13.1	Connections and routing			
13.1.1	All connections shall be secured against accidental loosening		Р	
	The means of connection shall be suitable for the cross-sectional areas and nature of the conductors being terminated		Р	
	No connection of two or more conductors to one terminal, unless the terminal is designed for it		Р	
	No soldered connections to terminals unless they are suitable for it		Р	
	Terminals on terminal blocks are plainly marked or labelled corresponding with the diagrams		Р	
	Installations of flexible conduits and cables are such that liquids drain away from the fittings		Р	
	Retaining means for conductor strand and shields provided (no soldering for that purpose)		Р	
	Indentification tags shall be legible, permanent, and appropriate for the physical environment		Р	
	Terminal blocks mounted and wired so that the wiring does not cross over the terminals		Р	
13.1.2	Conductors and cables shall be run from terminal to terminal without splices or joints		Р	
	Connections using plug/socket combinations with suitable protection against accidental disconnection are not considered to be splices or joints for the purpose of this subclause		Р	
	Exceptions are possible as described		Р	



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	Terminations of cables shall be adequately supported to prevent mechanical stresses at the terminations of the conductors		Р
	Protective conductor shall be placed close to the associated live conductors in order to decrease the impedance of the loop		Р
13.1.3	Conductors for circuits that operate at different voltages are separated by suitable barriers, or are insulated for the highest voltage that occurs within the same duct		Р
13.1.4	Conductors of AC circuits installed in ferromagnetic enclosures shall be arranged so that all conductors of each circuit, including the protective conductor of each circuit, are contained in the same enclosure		Р
	Single-core cables armoured with steel wire or steel tape should not be used for AC circuits		Р
13.1.5	The cable between the pick-up and the pick-up converter of an inductive power supply system shall be:		_
	- as short as practicable		Р
	 adequately protected against mechanical damage 		Р
13.2.1	Each conductor shall be identifiable at each termination in accordance with the technical documentation		Р
13.2.2	When identification of the protective conductor is by colour alone, the bicolour combination GREEN-AND-YELLOW shall be used throughout the length of the conductor		Р
	Where the protective conductor can be easily identified colour coding throughout its length is not necessary, but the ends or accessible locations are clearly identified by the graphical symbol or by the bicolour combination GREEN-AND-YELLOW		Р
	Exception: Protective bonding conductors may be marked with the letters PB and/or the symbol IEC 60417-5021		Р
13.2.3	Where a neutral conductor is identified by colour alone, the colour shall be BLUE (preferably light blue)		Р
	In this case that colour shall not be used for identifying any other conductor where confusion is possible		Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
			·
	Bare conductors used as neutral conductors shall have at minimum a stripe in LIGHT BLUE 15 mm to 100 mm wide in each compartment or unit and at each accessible location		P
13.2.4	Where colour-coding is used, BLACK, BROWN, RED, ORANGE, YELLOW, GREEN, BLUE (including LIGHT BLUE), VIOLET, GREY, WHITE, PINK, TURQUOISE may be used		Р
	GREEN and YELLOW should not be used where there is a possibility of confusion with the bicolour combination GREEN-AND-YELLOW		Р
13.3	Wiring inside enclosures		_
	Conductors inside enclosures shall be supported where necessary		Р
	Non-metallic supports shall be made with a flame-retardant insulating material (see IEC 60332 series)		Р
	Connections to devices mounted on doors or to other movable parts shall be made using flexible conductors in accordance with 12.2 and 12.6.		Р
	Conductors and cables that do not run in ducts shall be adequately supported		Р
13.4	Wiring outside enclosures		_
13.4.1	Conductors of a circuit shall not be distributed over different multi-core cables, conduits, etc.		Р
13.4.2	Conductors and their connections external to the electrical equipment shall be placed in suitable ducts (see cl.13.5)		Р
	Exceptions: b) Cables with special suitable protection. c) Position switches or proximity switches supplied with a dedicated cable which is sufficiently short		
13.4.3	Connections to moving parts shall take into account the foreseeable frequency of movement and shall be made using conductors in accordance with 12.2 and 12.6		Р
	The bending radius of the cable shall be at least 10 times the diameter of the cable		Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	Flexible cables of machines shall be so installed or protected as to minimize the possibility of external damage (run over, forces, rubbing, heat, etc.)		P
	Cables close to moving parts, shall maintain a space of at least 25 mm between the moving parts and the cables or barriers are provided		Р
	Cable handling systems: Lateral cable angles not exceeding 5°, at being wound on and off cable drums or approaching and leaving cable guidance devices. The bending radius shall be in accordance with Table 8		Р
	Flexible conduit shall not be used for connections subject to rapid or frequent movements except when specifically designed for that purpose		Р
13.4.4	Where several machine-mounted devices are connected in series or in parallel, it is recommended that the connections between those devices be made through terminals forming intermediate test points		Р
13.4.5	Plug/socket combinations		_
	Components or devices inside an enclosure, terminated by fixed plug/socket combinations (no flexible cable), or components connected to a bus system by a plug/socket combination, are excluded		N/A
	Where the plug/socket contains a contact for the protective bonding circuit, it shall have a first make last break contact (see also 8.2.4).		N/A
	Plug/socket combinations intended to be connected or disconnected during load conditions shall have sufficient load-breaking capacity		N/A
	Where the plug/socket combination is rated at 30 A, or greater, it shall be interlocked		N/A
	Plug/socket combinations that are rated at more than 16 A shall have a retaining means to prevent unintended or accidental disconnection.		N/A
	Where an unintended or accidental disconnection of plug/socket combinations can cause a hazardous situation, they shall have a retaining means.		N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
			_
	The installation of plug/socket combinations shall fulfil the following requirements as applicable: a)The component which remains live after disconnection shall have a degree of protection of at least IP2X or IPXXB - Metallic housings of plug/socket combinations shall be connected to the protective bonding circuit - Plug/socket combinations intended to carry power loads but not to be disconnected during load conditions shall have a retaining means to prevent unintended or accidental disconnection and shall be clearly marked accordingly - Where more than one plug/socket combination is provided in the same electrical equipment, the associated combinations shall be clearly identifiable. Mechanical coding is recommended - Plug/socket combinations used in control circuits shall fulfil the applicable requirements of IEC 61984. Exception: combinations in accordance with IEC 60309-1, only those contacts shall be used for control circuits which are intended for those purposes. This exception does not apply to control circuits using high frequency signals superimposed on the power circuits.		N/A
13.4.6	Where it is necessary that wiring be disconnected for shipment, terminals or plug/socket combinations shall be provided at the sectional points.		N/A
13.4.7	When spare conductors are provided, they shall be connected to spare terminals or isolated to prevent contact with live parts		N/A
13.5	Ducts, connection boxes and other boxes		
	Ducts shall provide a degree of protection (see IEC 60529) suitable for the application		Р
	No sharp edges, flash, burrs, rough surfaces, or threads with which the insulation of the conductors can come into contact		Р
	Where human passage is required, least 2 m above the working surface		N/A
	Where cable trays are only partially covered, the cables used shall be of a type suitable for installation on open cable trays.		N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
		1	
13.5.2	Rigid metal conduit and fittings shall be of galvanized steel or of a corrosion-resistant material		P
	Fittings shall be compatible with the conduit and should be threaded		Р
	Conduit bends shall be properly made		Р
13.5.3	A flexible metal conduit shall consist of a flexible metal tubing or woven wire armour		N/A
13.5.4	Flexible non-metallic conduit shall be resistant to kinking		N/A
13.5.5	Cable trunking systems external to enclosures shall be rigidly supported and clear of all moving and of sources of contamination		N/A
	Where furnished in sections, the joints shall fit tightly but need not be gasketed		N/A
	The only openings permitted shall be those required for wiring or for drainage		N/A
13.5.6	The use of compartments or cable trunking systems within the column or base of a machine to enclose conductors is permitted provided they are isolated from coolant or oil reservoirs and are entirely enclosed		N/A
	Conductors shall be so secured		N/A
13.5.7	Connection boxes and other boxes used for wiring purposes shall be accessible for maintenance.		N/A
	Those boxes shall provide protection against the ingress of solid bodies and liquids		N/A
	They shall not have opened but unused knockouts nor any other openings		N/A
13.5.8	Motor connection boxes shall enclose only connections to the motor and motor-mounted devices (e.g. brakes, temperature sensors		Р
14	ELECTRIC MOTORS AND ASSOCIATED EQUIPM	ENT	_
14.1	Electric motors should conform to the relevant parts of IEC 60034 series	CE marking is provided.	Р
14.2	Enclosures for motors should be in accordance with IEC 60034-5	Meet requirements	Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
		_	
	The degree of protection shall be dependent on the application and the physical environment		Р
14.3	The dimensions of motors shall conform to those given in the IEC 60072 series		Р
14.4	Motors and its accessories shall be so mounted that they are adequately protected and are easily accessible for inspection, maintenance, etc.	Meet requirements	Р
	Proper cooling shall be ensured and the temperature rise shall remain within the limits of the insulation class (see IEC 60034-1)		Р
	There shall be no opening between the motor compartment and any other compartment that does not meet the motor compartment requirements		Р
14.5	The characteristics of motors and associated equipment shall be selected in accordance with the anticipated service and physical environmental conditions	Meet requirements	Р
14.6	Operation of the overload and overcurrent protective devices for mechanical brake actuators shall initiate the simultaneous de-energization (release) of the associated machine actuators	Meet requirements	Р
15	SOCKET-OUTLETS AND LIGHTING		_
15.1	For socket-outlets intended for accessory equipment	, the following apply:	_
	- they should conform to IEC 60309-1. Where not practicable, they should be clearly marked with the voltage and current ratings		N/A
	- the continuity of the protective bonding circuit to the socket-outlet shall be ensured		N/A
	- all unearthed conductors connected to the socket- outlet shall be protected against overcurrent and, when required, overload		N/A
	 where the power supply to the socket-outlet is not disconnected by the supply disconnecting device for the machine or the section of the machine, the requirements of 5.3.5 apply 		N/A
	 where fault protection is provided by automatic disconnection of supply, the disconnection time shall be in accordance with Table A.1 for TN systems or Table A.2 for TT systems 		N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	-socket-outlets with a rating not exceeding 20 A shall be provided with an RCD not exceeding 30 mA		N/A
15.2	Local lighting of the machine and of the equipme	nt	_
15.2.1	The ON/OFF switch shall not be incorporated in the lampholder or in the flexible connecting cord		N/A
	Stroboscopic effects from lights shall be avoided		N/A
15.2.2	The nominal voltage of the local lighting circuit shall not exceed 250 V between conductors. A voltage not exceeding 50 V is recommended		N/A
	Lighting circuits shall be supplied from one of the follow	owing sources:	_
	 a dedicated isolating transformer connected to the supply disconnecting device. Overcurrent protection shall be provided in the secondary circuit 		N/A
	 a dedicated isolating transformer connected before the supply disconnecting device. This is permitted for maintenance lighting in control enclosures only. Overcurrent protection shall be provided in the secondary circuit 		N/A
	 a circuit of the electrical equipment of the machine for lighting, with dedicated overcurrent protection 		N/A
	 an isolating transformer connected before the supply disconnecting device, provided with a dedicated primary disconnecting means (see 5.3.5) and secondary overcurrent protection, and mounted within the control enclosure adjacent to the supply disconnecting device 		N/A
	 an externally supplied lighting circuit (for example factory lighting supply). This shall be permitted in control enclosures only, and for the machine work light(s) where their total power rating is not more than 3 kW 		N/A
	 power supply units, for DC supply to LED light sources, fitted with isolating transformers 		N/A
	Exception: where fixed lighting is out of reach of operators during normal operations, the provisions of this 15.2.2 do not apply		N/A
15.2.3	Local lighting circuits shall be protected in accordance with 7.2.6		N/A
15.2.4	Adjustable lighting fittings shall be suitable for the physical environment		N/A



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	The lampholders shall be:		N/A
	– in accordance with the relevant IEC standard		N/A
	constructed with an insulating material protecting the lamp cap so as to prevent unintentional contact		N/A
	Reflectors shall be supported by a bracket and not by the lampholder		N/A
	Exception: where fixed lighting is out of reach of operators during normal operations, the provisions of this 15.2.4 do not apply		N/A
16	MARKING, WARNING SIGNS AND REFERENCE D	ESIGNATIONS	_
16.1	Warning signs, nameplates, markings, labels and identification plates shall be of sufficient durability	See the instruction manual.	Р
16.2.1	Enclosures that do not otherwise clearly show that they contain electrical shall be marked with the graphical symbol ISO 7010-W012		Р
	It may be omitted (see also 6.2.2 b)) for: • an enclosure equipped with a supply disconnecting device • an operator-machine interface or control station • a single device with its own enclosure (for example position sensor)		Р
16.2.2	Where the risk assessment shows the need to warn against the possibility of hazardous surface temperatures, the graphical symbol ISO 7010-W017 shall be used		Р
16.3	Control devices and visual indicators, shall be clearly and durably marked with regard to their functions	They are have the clearly marking.	Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
16.4	The following information shall be legibly and durably marked - plainly visible after installation on enclosures that receive incoming power supplies: • name or trade mark of supplier • certification mark or other marking where applicable • type designation or model, where applicable • serial number where applicable • main document number (see IEC 62023) where applicable • rated voltage, number of phases and frequency (if AC), and full-load current for each incoming supply It is recommended that this information is provided adjacent to the main incoming supply(ies)	See the nameplate.	P
16.5	All enclosures, assemblies, control devices, and components shall be plainly identified with the same reference designation as shown in the technical documentation		Р
17	TECHNICAL DOCUMENTATION		_
17.1	The information necessary for identification, transport, installation, use, maintenance, decommissioning and disposal of the electrical equipment shall be supplied		Р
	Annex I should be considered as guidance for the preparation of information and documents		Р
17.2	Information related to the electrical equipment		_
	The following shall be supplied:		_
	a) where more than one document is provided, a main document for the electrical equipment as a whole, listing the complementary documents		Р
	b) identification of the electrical equipment		Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	c) information on installation and mounting including: a description of installation and mounting, and its connection to the electrical and other supplies short-circuit current rating for each incoming power supply rated voltage, number of phases and frequency (if AC.), type of distribution system (TT, TN, IT) and full-load current for each incoming supply any additional electrical supply(ies) requirements (for example maximum supply source impedance, leakage current) for each incoming supply space required for servicing installation requirements regarding cooling environmental limitations (for example lighting, vibration, EMC environment, atmospheric contaminants) functional limitations (for example peak starting currents and permitted voltage drops) precautions to be taken for the installation regarding electromagnetic compatibility 		P
	d) an instruction for the connection of conductive- parts in the vicinity of the machine to the protective bonding circuit: • metallic pipes • fences • ladders • handrails		Р
	 e) information on the functioning and operation as applicable: • an overview of the structure of the electrical equipment • procedures for programming or configuring • procedures for restarting after an unexpected stop • a sequence of operation 		Р



	IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict	
	f) information on maintenance, as appropriate: a) frequency and method of functional testing b) instructions for safe maintenance and where necessary suspend a safety function and/or protective measure (see 9.3.6) c) guidance on the adjustment, repair, and frequency and method of preventive maintenance d) details of the interconnections subject to replacement e) required special devices or tools; f)spare parts; g) possible residual risks, indication of particular training and specification of personal protective equipment h) instructions to restrict availability of keys or too(s to skilled or instructed persons i) settings (DIP-switches, programmable parameter values, etc); j) information for validation of safety related control functions after repair or modification, and for periodic testing where necessary;		P	
	g) information on handling, transportation and storage		Р	
	h) information for proper disassembly and handling of components		Р	
18	VERFICATION		_	
18.1	The extent of verification will be given in the dedicated particular machine. Where there is no such standard, t include the items a), b), c) and h) and may include one a) verification that the electrical equipment complies wi b) verification of continuity of the protective bonding cir c) in case of fault protection by automatic disconnectio verified according to 18.2; d) insulation resistance test (see 18.3) e) voltage test (see 18.4) f) protection against residual voltage (see 18.5) g) verification that the relevant requirements of 8.2.6 ar h) functional tests (see 18.6)	the verifications shall always or more of the items d) to g): th its technical documentation reuit (Test 1 of 18.2.2) n of supply, conditions shall be	_	
	The results of the verification shall be documented		_	
18.2	Verification of conditions for protection by automatic	disconnection of supply	_	



IEC 60204-1			
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
18.2.1	Test 1 verifies the continuity of the protective bonding	g circuit.	Р
	Test 2 verifies the conditions for protection by autom in TN systems	atic disconnection of the supply	
	For TN-systems, those test methods are described in application for different conditions of supply are spec		
	For TT systems, see Clause A.2		
	For IT systems, see IEC 60364-6		
	Where RCDs are used in the electrical equipment, their function shall be verified in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The test procedure and test interval shall be specified in the maintenance instructions		
18.2.2	Test 1: Verification of the continuity of the protective bonding circuit		
	The resistance between the PE terminal (see 5.2 and Figure 4) and relevant points that are part of the protective bonding circuit shall be measured with a current between 0.2 A and approximately 10 A derived from an electrically separated supply source having a maximum no-load voltage of 24 V	See appended table	Р
	The resistance measured shall be in the expected range		_
18.2.3	Test 2: Fault loop impedance verification and suitability protective device	of the associated overcurrent	_
	The connections of each power supply including the connection of the associated protective conductor to the PE terminal of the machine, shall be verified by inspection		Р
	The conditions for the protection by automatic disconnection of supply in accordance with 6.3.3 and Annex A shall be verified by both		Р
	 verification of the fault loop impedance by calculation, or measurement in accordance with A.4, and 		Р
	b) confirmation that the setting and characteristics of the associated overcurrent protective device are in accordance with the requirements of Annex A, and		Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
	Where a power drive system (PDS) is used, confirmation that the setting and characteristics of the protective device(s) are in accordance with the converter manufacturer's and protective device manufacturer's instructions		Р
18.2.4	Application of the test methods for TN-systems		_
	When Test 2 of 18.2.3 is carried out by measurement, it shall always be preceded by Test 1 of 18.2.2		Р
	The tests that are necessary for machines of different status are specified in Table 9		Р
18.3	Insulation resistance tests (optional)		_
	When insulation resistance tests are performed, the insulation resistance measured at 500 V DC between the power circuit conductors and the protective bonding circuit shall be not less than 1 $M\Omega$		Р
	If the electrical equipment of the machine contains surge protection devices which are likely to operate during the test, it is permitted to either: – disconnect these devices, or – reduce the test voltage to a value lower than the voltage protection level of the surge protection devices		Р
18.4	Voltage tests (optional)		_
	The test voltage shall be at a nominal frequency of 50 Hz or 60 Hz.		Р
	The maximum test voltage shall have a value of twice the rated supply voltage of the equipment or 1 000 V, whichever is the greater		Р
	The test voltage shall be applied between the power circuit conductors and the protective bonding circuit for at least 1 s		Р
	Components and devices that are not rated to withstand the test voltage and surge protection devices shall be disconnected		Р
18.5	Protection against residual voltages		_
	Where appropriate, tests shall be performed to ensure compliance with 6.2.4		Р
18.6	Functional tests		_
	The functions of electrical equipment shall be tested		Р



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
18.7	Retesting		_
	Where a portion of the machine or its associated equipment is changed or modified, the need for reverification and testing of the electrical equipment shall be considered		P
A	ANNEX A (NORMATIVE) FAULT PROTECTION BY AUTOMATIC DISCONNE	ECTION OF SUPPLY	_
A.1	Fault protection for machines supplied from TN-s		_
A.1.1	Fault protection shall be provided by an overcurrent protective device within a sufficiently short disconnecting time.		Р
	5 s is considered sufficiently short for machines that are neither hand-held nor portable.		Р
	Where not possible, supplementary protective bonding shall be provided in accordance with A.1.3		Р
	For Class 1 hand-held equipment or portable equipment table A.1 specifies the maximum disconnecting times		N/A
A.1.2	Conditions for protection by overcurrent protective devices fulfilled		Р
A.1.3	Condition for protection by reducing the touch voltage below 50 V fulfilled		Р
A.1.4	Verification of conditions for protection by automatic (A.1.2) by	disconnection of the supply	_
	-verification of the characteristics of the associated protective device and		Р
	-measurement of the fault loop impedance (Zs)		Р
	Exception: Verification of the continuity of the protective conductors may replace the measurement where appropriate		Р
A.2	Fault protection for machines supplied from TT-s	ystems	_
	Expand if applicable		N/A
В	ANNEX B (INFORMATIVE) ENQUIRY FORM FOR THE ELECTRICAL EQUIPM	ENT OF MACHINES	_
	The use of this form can facilitate an exchange of information between the user and supplier		



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
			1
С	ANNEX C (INFORMATIVE) EXAMPLES OF MACHINES COVERED BY THIS P	ART OF IEC 60204	_
	Non exhaustive list of examples This standard does not apply to machines within the scope of the IEC 60335 series		_
D	ANNEX D (INFORMATIVE) CURRENT-CARRYING CAPACITY AND OVERCUR CONDUCTORS AND CABLES	RRENT PROTECTION OF	_
D.2.1	Correction factors for PVC conductors at higher temperatures		_
D.2.2	Methods of installation		_
D.2.3	Grouping and derating factors		_
D.4	Guidance for overcurrent protection of conductors		
E	ANNEX E (INFORMATIVE) EXPLANATION OF EMERGENCY OPERATION FU	INCTIONS	
	Description of emergency stop, start, switching off, switching on		_
F	ANNEX (INFORMATIVE) GUIDE FOR THE USE OF THIS PART OF IEC 6020	04	_
	This standard gives a large number of general requirements that may or may not be applicable to the electrical equipment of a particular machine.		_
G	ANNEX (INFORMATIVE) COMPARISON OF TYPICAL CONDUCTOR CROS	S-SECTIONAL AREAS	_
	Comparison of the American Wire Gauge (AWG), square millimetres, square inches, and circular mil		_



	IEC 60204-1		
Clause	Requirement - Test	Result - Remark	Verdict
Н	ANNEX (INFORMATIVE) MEASURES TO REDUCE THE EFFECTS OF ELECTION INFLUENCES	CTROMAGNETIC	_
	Expand if applicable		_
H.3.1	Only electrical equipment which meets the requirements of the appropriate EMC standards, or the EMC requirements of the relevant product standard, should be used		_
1	ANNEX I (INFORMATIVE) DOCUMENTATION / INFORMATION		_
	Table I.1 gives a list of Documentation / Information that can be applicable		_



1. Continuity of the protective bonding circuit

Review Points	Review Result(mΩ)	Review Current(A)	Voltage Drop(V)
PE-Control Panel	68	10	0.68
PE-Electrical Box	58	10	0.58
PE-Motor1	65	10	0.65
Transformer1	68	10	0.68

2. Insulation Resistance

Review Points	Review Result(MΩ)
PE-Power Inlet	>2MΩ
PE-Motor1	>2MΩ
Transformer1	>2MΩ

3. Withstanding Voltage

Review Points	Breakdown
PE-Power Inlet	No
PE-Motor1	No
Transformer1	No



List of Review equipment used: (Note: This is an example of the required attachment. Other forms with a different layout but containing similar information are also acceptable.)

Clause	ID of Review equipment	Measurement / Reviewing	Reviewing / measuring equipment / material used	Range used	Calibration due date
4.4	PT-2	Psychrometer-Thermo graph	-10~50°C, 5%~98%R.H	10~50°C, 5%~98% R.H	2023-06-20
4.3	JO-1	Oscilloscope	0~20KVac/ 0~16KVdc, 0 ~ 200MHz,0~200MS	0-500V	2023-06-20
7.4, 11.2.3	JT-4	Chart Recorder	0~1000°C	0-200°C	2023-06-20
17	TM-1	Tape-Measure	0~35 m	0-35m	2023-06-20
12.7.6	XS-1	Digital Caliper	0~200 mm	0-200mm	2023-06-20
18.4	DH-3	Withstanding Voltage Reviewer	0~5KV 0.3-100mA 50/60Hz	2000V ac	2023-06-20
8.2	DA-3	Leakage Current Meter	0-10mA, 0-150V / 0-500V	0-500V ac	2023-06-20
18.4	SW-2	Stop watch	0-99 h	0-99h	2023-06-20
18.3	INSU-01	Insulation resistance meter	0-500 M ohm	0-500 Mohm	2023-06-20
8.2	GRD-01	Earthening continuity meter	0-10 ohm	0-2 ohm	2023-06-20
7.4, 11.2.3	TH-1	Thermocouple	0-1000°C, type K	0-200°C	2023-06-20



3.4 EN 60204-1:2018 Report

(ATTACHMENT TO TEST REPORT IEC 60204-1

European Group Differences and National Differences)

ATTACHMENT TO TEST REPORT IEC 60204-1 EUROPEAN GROUP DIFFERENCES AND NATIONAL DIFFERENCES Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines Part 1: General requirements

Differences according to..... EN 60204-1:2018

Attachment Form No.....: EU_GD_IEC60204_1B

Attachment Originator..... Eurofins Electrosuisse

Master Attachment..... 2019-03-15

Copyright © 2019 IEC System for Conformity Testing and Certification of Electrical Equipment (IECEE), Geneva, Switzerland. All rights reserved.

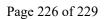
	CENELEC COMMON MODIFICATIONS (EN)	-	
4.4.2	Delete the 2nd paragraph and related bulleted list	Р	
4.4.5	Replace the text of the 2nd paragraph before the hyphened list with: "For equipment to be used at higher altitudes, it is necessary to take into account changes in parameters for example, the reduction of:"	Р	
	Add the start of the 3rd paragraph: "Other parameters of different components can also alter with altitude."	Р	
6.3.1	Replace Note 1 with: "The risk of harmful physiological effects from touch voltages depends upon a number of factors. These include but are not limited to; touch voltage, duration of possible exposure, environmental factors, skin condition"	P	
9.2.3.2	Replace the 4th paragraph with: "The provision of acoustic and/or visual warning signals before the starting of hazardous machine operation shall be considered during the risk assessment. Where the risk assessment determines that either or both are required the emission level of noise/light shall be suitable for the intended environment."	P	
9.2.4.1	Replace the 2nd paragraph with: "Where a safety function of a CCS relies on data transmission the transmission reliability shall be considered."	Р	
9.2.4.8	Replace the last paragraph with: "Where the risk assessment shows that resetting of an emergency stop actuator on the portable cableless operator control station is not adequate then one or more supplementary fixed resets shall be provided."	P	



11.4	In the 8th paragraph, replace "harmful" with "detrimental"	Р
12.3	In the 1st paragraph, replace "should" with "shall"	Р
13.5.2	First paragraph, 2nd sentence, replace with "Where galvanic action is possible between dissimilar metals these metal combinations shall not be used".	Р
16.1	Add to the first paragraph: "The markings shall be sufficiently durable to remain legible for the foreseen lifetime of the machine."	Р
16.4	Delete the 2nd bullet	Р
18.1	Add to paragraph 2: "Where the sequence cannot be followed verification a) and b) shall be conducted first."	Р
	Add the following annexes	P
ZA	Annex ZA (normative) Normative references to international publications with their corresponding European publications	-
	A list of documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content constitutes requirements of this document	Р
ZZA	Annex ZZA (informative) Relationship between this European Standard and the essential requirements of Directive 2006/42/EC aimed to be covered	-
	This European Standard provides one voluntary means of conforming to essential requirements of Directive 2006/42/EC	Р
	Once cited in the Official Journal of the European Union, compliance with the normative clauses of this standard given in Table ZZA.1 confers, within the limits of the scope of this standard, a presumption of conformity	Р
	Table ZZA.1 shows the correspondence between this European Standard and Annex 1 of Directive 2006/42/EC	Р
	Not considered are in this standard: - noise (1.7.4.2 and 1.5.8 of Annex I of the directive) - EMC (1.5.10 and 1.5.11)	Р



	WARNING 1 — Presumption of conformity stays valid only as long as a reference to this European Standard is maintained in the list published in the Official Journal of the European Union	Р
	WARNING 2 — Other Union legislation may be applicable to the product(s) falling within the scope of this standard.	Р
ZZB	Annex ZZB (informative) Relationship between this European Standard and the essential requirements of Directive 2014/35/EC aimed to be covered	-
	This European Standard provides one voluntary means of conforming to essential requirements of Directive 2014/35/EC	Р
	Once cited in the Official Journal of the European Union, compliance with the normative clauses of this standard given in Table ZZB.1 confers, within the limits of the scope of this standard, a presumption of conformity	Р
	Table ZZB.1 shows the correspondence between this European Standard and Annex 1 of Directive 2014/35/EC	Р
	Remarks about certain objectives of Annex I:	N/A
	2b): For electromagnetic fields, this standard does not provide performance requirements for either immunity or emissions. Only general advice is given. EMF is not covered. Ionizing radiation is not considered.	Р
	2c): Noise is not considered in this standard. Functional safety is not fully covered. Explosion of batteries has not been covered by this standard. Optical radiation is not covered	Р
	3a): The standard only considers the mechanical requirements for electrical parts of a machine	Р
	3b): For EMC, this standard does not provide performance requirements for either immunity or emissions. Only general advice is given Hazard associated with EMC and functional safety are not covered Safety-related security is not covered	Р





WARNING 1 — Presumption of conformity stays valid only as long as a reference to this European Standard is maintained in the list published in the Official Journal of the European Union	Р
WARNING 2 — Other Union legislation may be applicable to the product(s) falling within the scope of this standard.	Р



Annex: Technical Information

File No: MD-TCF-230728-49218
Applicant:

Resaeng co., ltd

Address of applicant:

401,22, Mora-ro, Sasang-gu, Busan, Republic of Korea



A.1 Safety pictures of the machine

Legal	Person:		

Product: Mega Reencle
Model: RSV2B / RSV2B-1 / RSV2B-2 / RSV2B-3
RSV2C / RSV2C-1 / RSV2C-2 / RSV2C-3
RSV2D / RSV2D-1 / RSV2D-2 / RSV2D-3 / RSV2D-R
HMV2D / HMV2D-1 / HMV2D-2 / HMV2D-3



Annex 1: Safety pictures of the machine

Type of equipment: Mega Reencle

De	etails of:		
Vie	ew:		TA DESAENG Maga Renata
[X]	general		Mgg Rende
[] front		· · ·
[] rear	Mega R	eencie
[] right		
[] left		
[] top		
[] bottom		

Details of: View: [X] general [] front [] rear [] left [] lop [] bottom





- End of Report -